

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 macular edema, and diabetic retinopathy.

2 Q. For the next bit of your testimony, I want to ask you
3 just to focus on the AMD indication. Okay?

4 A. Uh-huh.

5 Q. So let's take down PTX 3097 and go back -- actually,
6 before we do that let me ask this.

7 Can we check off the box in Claim 6 for the first
8 limitation that Mylan or Biocon recommends the first step of
9 Claim 6?

10 A. Yes, that would be correct.

11 Q. Let's take down PTX 3097, and then let's keep moving.

12 What's the next limitation of Claim 6 that you
13 analyzed to determine whether Mylan's label or Biocon's label
14 recommends infringement?

15 A. So the next limitation is that the treatment, the
16 method, comprises sequentially administering to the patient by
17 intravitreal injection a single initial dose of 2 milligrams of
18 aflibercept.

19 Q. Dr. Csaky, does the proposed Yesafili labeling
20 encourage, recommend, or promote doctors to sequentially
21 administer to the patient by intravitreal injection a single
22 initial dose of 2 milligrams of aflibercept?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Let's bring back up the label. That's PTX 3097, and
25 we're looking at page 1 and the "Dosage and Administration"

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 section for AMD. Excuse me. We're looking at page 2, and
2 that's the "Dosage and Administration" section for AMD.

3 Where does Mylan or Biocon's label recommend that
4 doctors sequentially administer to the patient by intravitreal
5 injection a single initial dose of 2 milligrams of aflibercept?

6 A. Right. So under the, again, "Dosage and
7 Administration," it says the recommended dose for Yesafili,
8 2 milligrams, to be administered intravitreal injection every
9 four weeks, monthly.

10 Q. Okay. And you said every four weeks, monthly. Are
11 any of those monthly doses a single initial dose?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Which one?

14 A. Well, it's the first -- first one would be the
15 initial dose.

16 Q. Fair enough.

17 We're going to move to the next requirement of
18 Claim 6 here in just a second, but before we do I want to talk
19 about a few issues that I think we're going to see over and
20 over again, and I want to see if we can clear the air on those
21 first to streamline things.

22 The patent claims on the right, they refer to
23 administering aflibercept. Do you see that?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Yesafili's label on the left -- that's PTX 3097 --

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 refers to administering Yesafili. Do you see that?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. What is the active ingredient in Yesafili?

4 A. Aflibercept.

5 Q. So whenever PTX 3097 recommends administration of
6 Yesafili, is it recommending the use of aflibercept?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. The patent claims also all require that the doses of
9 aflibercept be 2 milligram doses.

10 Do you see that?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And that will appear in the other claims we look at,
13 right?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. Turning back to the "Dosage and Administration"
16 section we looked at earlier -- that's again PTX 3097, page
17 2 -- what dose of aflibercept does Yesafili's label recommend
18 that doctors administer?

19 A. 2 milligrams.

20 Q. I know we're only looking at AMD on the screen right
21 now, but have you reviewed PTX 3097 -- that's the proposed
22 labeling -- in full?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Is there any dose referred to in PTX 3097 that is not
25 a 2-milligram dose?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Not that I could find.

2 Q. Okay. So whenever PTX 3097 recommends administration
3 of Yesafili, is it recommending the use of 2 milligrams of
4 aflibercept?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. All right. Last but not least, the claims are all
7 going to require intravitreal administration, I think an image
8 that is now burned into our brains.

9 How does Mylan or Biocon recommend administering
10 aflibercept in PTX 3097?

11 A. Through intravitreal injection.

12 Q. Again, any kind of administration other than
13 intravitreal administration that's described at all in this
14 label?

15 A. Not that I could find.

16 Q. For shorthand, whenever PTX 3097 recommends
17 administering Yesafili, is it, in fact, recommending that
18 doctors administer a 2-milligram intravitreal dose of
19 aflibercept?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. All right. Then let's keep cruising here. You can
22 take down PTX 3097 for a moment and turn back to your slides.

23 Can we check off this box that Yesafili's label
24 recommends sequentially administering to the patient by
25 intravitreal injection a single initial dose of 2 milligrams of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 aflibercept?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. All right. Then let's turn to the next set of
4 limitations, and I see you've highlighted two.

5 What are the next limitations of Claim 6 that you'll
6 address?

7 A. So the next limitations are these idea of secondary
8 doses. And the claims are that there should be one or more
9 secondary doses of 2 milligrams of aflibercept and that each of
10 these secondary doses be administered approximately four weeks
11 following the immediate preceding dose.

12 Q. Let's bring back up PTX 3097, still looking at
13 page 2.

14 Does Mylan or Biocon's labels recommend that doctors
15 administer -- excuse me -- does Mylan or Biocon's label
16 recommend that doctors follow the initial dose with one or more
17 secondary doses of 2 milligrams of aflibercept wherein each
18 secondary dose is administered approximately four weeks
19 following the immediately preceding dose?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. Where?

22 A. So, again, it says under "Dosage and Administration,"
23 the recommended dose of Yesafili is 2 milligrams to be
24 administered every four weeks for the first 12 weeks or three
25 months.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And of those first three injections, which, if any,
2 of those correspond to the secondary doses of the claim
3 language?

4 A. So the secondary doses in this case would be the
5 second and third injections.

6 Q. Those are the ones after the initial one?

7 A. Correct.

8 Q. Does PTX 3097 recommend that doctors administer those
9 secondary doses approximately four weeks following the
10 immediately preceding dose?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Where does it do that?

13 A. It says right here that these injections should be
14 administered every four weeks, approximately every 28 days or
15 monthly.

16 Q. So then let's turn back to your slides. We're
17 looking at PDX 4028.

18 Dr. Csaky, can we check off these boxes? Does the
19 label recommend -- excuse me -- does PTX 3097 recommend both of
20 these steps of the method of Claim 6?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. All right. What's next? What's the next limitation
23 of Claim 6 you analyzed?

24 A. So the next are the "followed by one or more tertiary
25 doses of 2 milligrams of aflibercept," and this too has another

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 limitation in that each tertiary dose be administered
2 approximately eight weeks following the immediate preceding
3 dose.

4 Q. Okay. After recommending the initial and secondary
5 doses we just looked at, does PTX 3097 encourage, recommend, or
6 promote that doctors administer one or more tertiary doses of
7 2 milligrams aflibercept wherein each tertiary dose is
8 administered approximately eight weeks following the
9 immediately preceding dose?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. Let's pull back up the label. That's PTX 3097.
12 Dr. Csaky, where is that recommendation?

13 A. So, again, it states here under "Dosage and
14 Administration" that, after the initial doses, they should be
15 followed by 2 milligrams of the intravitreal injection once
16 every eight weeks or two months.

17 Q. And just in the language of the claims, which of
18 those 2-milligram intravitreal injections once every eight
19 weeks or two months are the tertiary doses of the claim?

20 A. All of them.

21 Q. Any of them that are administered?

22 A. Any of them that are administered would be considered
23 tertiary doses.

24 Q. And, again, does the label explicitly recommend
25 administering tertiary doses once every eight weeks?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Where is that?

3 A. Again, it says to be -- injection once every eight
4 weeks under the dosage and administration label.

5 Q. All right. So turning to Slide 29, that's PDX 429,
6 can we check off these boxes? Does Mylan/Biocon's label
7 recommend that doctors perform the tertiary dose steps of
8 Claim 6?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. All right. Looking at PDX 430, we've now made it to
11 the crossed-out limitation. Can we skip this one for purposes
12 of your analysis?

13 A. Yes, I did.

14 Q. Then let's turn to Slide PDX 431. What's the last
15 limitation of Claim 6, Dr. Csaky?

16 A. It says, "wherein the aflibercept is formulated as an
17 isotonic solution."

18 Q. Dr. Csaky, did you evaluate whether the Yesafili
19 aflibercept that Mylan's label recommends doctors administer is
20 formulated as an isotonic solution?

21 A. I did not.

22 Q. Why not?

23 A. I'm not a formulation expert.

24 Q. Do you know if anyone did address that limitation?

25 A. I've been informed that Dr. Trout performed that

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 analysis.

2 Q. And just to set expectations, Dr. Trout will testify
3 as to infringement shortly. I expect him to address that
4 limitation. And so with that in mind, Dr. Csaky, let's turn to
5 the next slide, PDX 432. And I just want to ask you, for the
6 rest of your testimony about Claim 6, I need you to assume that
7 Dr. Trout will testify that the aflibercept recommended by
8 Mylan Biocon's label to be administered is formulated in an
9 isotonic solution.

10 Do you understand that?

11 A. Yes.

12 THE COURT: While those boxes are checked, Counsel,
13 would it be a good time to take our morning break?

14 MS. KAYALI: Absolutely, Your Honor.

15 THE COURT: We'll do that, then. We'll take
16 15 minutes. If everybody could be ready to resume at ten after
17 11:00, we'll resume the doctor's testimony.

18 Sir, you can take a break if you'd like, and you can
19 step down. I'll give you the same speech. I recognize you're
20 an expert; but for purity of our circumstances, yes, the same
21 speech you heard me give Dr. Yancopoulos yesterday applies to
22 you. You're a man without a country. No one's being rude or
23 discourteous, but they're not allowed to talk you midstream.
24 So we'll go with that.

25 Otherwise, we'll see everyone here in 15 minutes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Thank you all.

2 (A recess was taken from 10:59 a.m. to
3 11:15 a.m.)

4 THE COURT: Counsel, you may proceed.

5 MS. KAYALI: Thank you, Your Honor.

6 BY MS. KAYALI:

7 Q. Dr. Csaky, we're going to hop right back to Slide 32
8 where we left off. But before I ask the next question there,
9 earlier in your testimony, I believe you testified that about
10 1 million patients suffer from AMD. Is that about 1 million in
11 the United States?

12 A. Correct.

13 Q. And DME and DR, you also explained that those
14 diseases are common. Are they common in the United States?

15 A. Correct.

16 Q. So then let's turn back to where we left off. We had
17 just checked off all the boxes. Let me just ask this: Is
18 there anything else in Claim 6 we need to look for in Mylan's
19 label?

20 A. No.

21 Q. We got them all. That's all the limitations?

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. All right. So then let's go to the next slide. And
24 I want to turn back to the question we started with. That's
25 PDX 433.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 In view of your testimony, in your opinion, does the
2 Mylan Biocon label, PTX 3097, recommend that doctors perform
3 every step of the method of Claim 6 to treat AMD using
4 Yesafili?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Okay. In view of that, does the Mylan Biocon label
7 recommend that doctors perform a method that infringes Claim 6?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. Let's turn to the next slide, then, and ask -- let's
10 focus now on Question Number 2. Okay?

11 And, actually, I should back myself up.

12 Before we focus on Question Number 2, I want to see
13 if we can do something to help us move just a little faster
14 through the rest of this examination. We've been looking at
15 page 2 of PTX 3097.

16 If we could bring that back up, please. And if we
17 could call out the -- there you go, Section 2.2, the dosing
18 instructions for AMD.

19 Is there anywhere else other than this section on
20 page 2, "Dosage and Administration," that communicates the same
21 information about Mylan or Biocon's label recommends that
22 doctors use Yesafili to treat AMD?

23 A. Not that I can see.

24 Q. Let's take a look at page 1 of the label. And
25 page 1, are they what's called the "Highlights of the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Prescribing Information"?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. Okay. Do the highlights of the prescribing
4 information say the same thing about how doctors should
5 administer Yesafili to treat AMD as the more -- the longer
6 section on page 2 of the exhibit?

7 A. When I read these, they are identical.

8 Q. Okay. So, really, what I'm asking is, to avoid
9 flipping back and forth, can we stick with the highlights of
10 the prescribing information as we move forward?

11 A. That would be fine.

12 Q. It says the same thing as the more detailed stuff
13 later?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. All right. Now, let me ask while we have this up, I
16 see three bullet points under -- on the left. This is
17 PTX 3097, page 1, the dosage and administration section and the
18 highlights of the prescribing information. I see three bullet
19 points that look like they correspond to the three sentences in
20 the full Section 2.2 dosage and administration on page 2.

21 Do you see that?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. Which of those bullet points have you focused your
24 testimony on today?

25 A. The first bullet point.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Why did you do that?

2 A. I did that because that's the only place in reviewing
3 this document that I could see that the term "recommended" was
4 used.

5 Q. So how many recommended dosing regimens are there in
6 Mylan or Biocon's label as to how doctors should administer
7 Yesafili in order to treat AMD?

8 A. There's only one recommended way.

9 Q. Is that the one you've offered testimony on today?

10 A. That's the one I've offered testimony on.

11 Q. Now, let's look at this briefly, because we're going
12 to get there, for diabetic macular edema and diabetic
13 retinopathy too.

14 Are there also highlights of the prescribing
15 information for diabetic macular edema and diabetic
16 retinopathy?

17 A. On here all I'm seeing is neovascular wet AMD.

18 Q. Okay. If we go back to page 1 of PTX 3097, could we
19 pull up the highlights of the prescribing information at the
20 bottom for diabetic macular edema and diabetic retinopathy?

21 Will we also be referring to the highlights of
22 prescribing information -- let me ask a better question.

23 Do the highlights of the prescribing information also
24 instruct doctors about how to use Yesafili to treat DME and DR?

25 A. Yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And we're going to come back to that in a minute. I
2 just wanted to sort of establish where we're headed next.

3 Let's go back. Let's go back to PDX 4/34 and turn
4 back to Question Number 2. We're in a world where you just
5 answered yes to Question Number 1, and now we're asking
6 ourselves -- you're asking yourself -- will any doctor perform
7 infringing methods as a result of Mylan or Biocon marketing
8 Yesafili using the proposed labeling we've just looked at?

9 And so I want to get into the nitty-gritty of your
10 answer in just a second, but let's answer that at a high level
11 first.

12 In your opinion, if Mylan or Biocon sell Yesafili
13 with the proposed labeling we've just looked at, will doctors
14 perform the method of Claim 6 and infringe Claim 6 as a result?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Okay. I want to talk a lot more about how and why
17 you know that. Let's ask some prefatory questions first.

18 Do ophthalmologists like yourself read labels?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Why?

21 A. Well, there's several reasons. Especially when a
22 drug comes onto the market, it gives us a good synopsis of the
23 important information of that drug, right? It tends to be a
24 synopsis of the data that supported its approval. So there
25 typically is a recommended usage that we now can be understood

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 should be an approach that we should consider. It outlines
2 again some of the issues, contraindications, reasons why you
3 would not want to use it, what to look for.

4 Other reasons -- for example, we have continuing
5 medical education lectures, right? And those typically require
6 that, if you're going to give a lecture on a drug, that you
7 give it on-label, which means that, as you're talking about the
8 aspects of the drug, that you're talking about it per the
9 label. So that's typically either a requirement or that you
10 have to notify the audience that you're going to be going
11 off-label.

12 And then of course in many cases sometimes insurance
13 carriers, they utilize the label for reimbursement purposes,
14 and so it's something you have to be aware of. So it's
15 something that all of us from time to time will be either
16 exposed to, read, or understand what's in the label.

17 Q. Well, does what the label say influence the way that
18 ophthalmologists use ophthalmic drugs?

19 A. Of course.

20 Q. Why?

21 A. Well, because, again, I mean, we have to understand
22 that there's several reasons that we'd want to look -- you
23 know, as we look at a label, these are the guideposts, right?
24 These are the instructions. And for many people, these are
25 kind of a good way to start. They're going to say, okay,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 here's how the agencies like the Food and Drug Administration,
2 who has approved the drug, is -- has recommended that it be
3 used. So, again, it gives us a starting point for how do we
4 utilize the drug.

5 So, again, there's lots of reasons to begin to review
6 that, especially with a new drug as it comes out, that's
7 something that we'll be exposed to and read.

8 Q. So in view of that, Mylan or Biocon sells Yesafili
9 with a label that recommends that doctors infringe Claim 6.
10 Will some doctors actually do what that label says and use
11 Yesafili according to the method of Claim 6?

12 A. Some doctors will in some patients.

13 Q. So I want to break things down a little bit because
14 you're offering testimony about Yesafili, and I think we've
15 established that drug's not on the market yet, right?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. So how is it that you can form an opinion about how
18 ophthalmologists will use Yesafili even though it hasn't been
19 sold yet?

20 A. Well, in forming my opinion I looked at how people
21 use Eylea. And I reviewed the Eylea label and I asked myself
22 is there any doctor with any patient that follows the label of
23 Eylea in order to make my decision.

24 Q. And if we bring back up PTX 917 on the left and
25 PTX 3097 on the right, is there any difference between how

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Regeneron recommends that doctors use Eylea and how Mylan or
2 Biocon recommends that doctors use Yesafili?

3 A. Not that I can see.

4 Q. All right. In view of the fact that these labels
5 make the same recommendations and in view of the fact that we
6 just walked through your opinion that Mylan or Biocon's label
7 encourages, recommends that doctors perform every method of
8 claim -- excuse me -- every step of the method of Claim 6, does
9 Eylea's label also recommend that doctors perform every step of
10 the method of Claim 6?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Now, we touched on this at a high level before, but
13 let's be a little more granular now. Do some doctors use Eylea
14 in the way that Regeneron's label recommends?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. How do you know?

17 A. Well, in doing my assessment, I kind of reviewed
18 several aspects. One, of course, is thinking back on how I
19 have used Eylea. And, again, as I said, there are certain
20 circumstances with certain patients, certain situations, where
21 I have followed the label for lots of reasons.

22 I've also -- when we sit on these committees and talk
23 about various approaches, clearly there are lots of
24 alternatives that people use, but there's still people who feel
25 as if these label indications still in many cases they have

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 that comfort in knowing that this will give them good visual
2 acuity in the patients that they want to treat.

3 So I used several kind of indicators of trying to
4 determine our -- again, are there some doctors in some patients
5 who will utilize this approach? And the conclusion I came to
6 was yes.

7 Q. I want to take each of those reasons that you just
8 offered in turn and dive in in a little more detail.

9 You said you have used Eylea in the way the label
10 recommends in accordance with the method of Claim 6. When and
11 why?

12 A. So, again, sometimes -- again, if you look -- I mean,
13 the label basically suggests that, you know, I need to be
14 giving three injections, which is again a very common approach
15 for neovascular AMD. And then it instructs me to say, okay,
16 wait eight weeks after that initial injection and do
17 eight-weeks injections.

18 And, again, there's certain circumstances, especially
19 when there is -- I think back specifically to times when, for
20 example, patients had challenges with scheduling, right? They
21 want to know exactly kind of what to expect. They want to be
22 able to figure out, Dr. Csaky, tell me exactly when I'm going
23 to be coming in. I can give them some guideposts and metrics
24 using this kind of approach.

25 So there again, it's lots of reasons to have this

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 wider range of treatment options for patients as you talk with
2 them and you ask them questions about what specifically --
3 remember, this is a burdensome approach. And if somebody,
4 especially in areas where they have trouble getting back and
5 forth and they have to arrange certain trips, you know, having
6 kind of a known schedule in certain circumstances can be really
7 helpful for the patient. So, again, there have been some cases
8 where I tried to and I have reviewed with the patient and I've
9 used this approach.

10 Q. Are there particular circumstances that stand out?

11 A. Again, I think, you know, when I look back -- again,
12 and this is typically in areas where getting to and from
13 certain regions are challenging -- like, again, sometimes in
14 these rural communities, it can be very challenging. If I'm
15 there once a week and I don't have the luxury of being there
16 often, it's nice to have that comfort to know the patients are
17 coming back and forth.

18 Also sometimes when I'm sharing a clinic with -- in
19 this case in one of my satellite clinics, we can easily share
20 patients because we kind of know what the schedules are going
21 to be like. So, again, there's certain circumstances in which
22 this type of approach can have some benefits.

23 Q. And this type of approach, that's the fixed-dosing
24 approach that's recommended by Eylea's label and covered by
25 Claim 6?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Correct. So this is a -- an approach where, again,
2 if you look at this label, it suggests that you want to have
3 that patient come in once every month for three months and then
4 start extending it to eight weeks.

5 Q. Well, I understand that's your experience, Dr. Csaky.
6 Is the retinal community such that you're familiar with how
7 other doctors use Eylea?

8 A. Yeah. I mean, I have -- like I said, I'm involved in
9 lots of committees, discussions. Even with some of my fellow
10 colleagues at Texas Retina, we talk about various approaches
11 that people use. So, again, this is -- it's part of our
12 armamentarium. What we want is we want to have different
13 approaches in our armamentarium that we can offer patients and
14 try to meet some of their needs and what they can have in terms
15 of their scheduling and things like that.

16 So that's really kind of a critical aspect to work
17 with patients and fully appreciate what's the best for them in
18 trying to get the best treatments.

19 Q. And just to be very clear, in your conversations that
20 you mentioned with other doctors, have you become aware as to
21 whether other doctors used the fixed-dosage regimen recommended
22 by Eylea's label and covered by Claim 6?

23 A. Yeah, I've had certain -- like I said, discussions.
24 And also I've seen certain documents where people have talked
25 about using these kinds of approaches.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Okay. During the course of preparing your opinion,
2 did you come across a document reflecting how any particular
3 doctor used the fixed-dosing approach?

4 A. Yes.

5 THE COURT: One second, Doctor.

6 Yes, Counsel?

7 MS. LESKO: Objection, Your Honor. I believe what --
8 the document that counsel's about to refer to is the
9 declaration of Dr. Do, who was an expert on behalf of Regeneron
10 in a separate proceeding. That is hearsay. It should not be
11 admissible. If they wanted to introduce Dr. Do as an expert in
12 this case, they could have done it.

13 THE COURT: Agreed, but, Counsel, go ahead.

14 MS. KAYALI: Your Honor, we don't intend to seek
15 admission of this document. Under Rule 703, Dr. Csaky is
16 permitted to rely on such things. And he only intends to
17 testify as to what that declaration said and how he relied on
18 it.

19 THE COURT: Understood. Assuming that foundation is
20 laid, objection overruled; but we'll keep an eye on it.

21 MS. KAYALI: Thank you. So let's bring up -- well,
22 I'm not sure if we got an answer to the last question; so let
23 me just ask it again.

24 THE COURT: Yeah, let's repeat that question.
25

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 BY MS. KAYALI:

2 Q. In the course of your work on this case, did you come
3 across a document reflecting how any particular doctor -- or
4 whether any particular doctor uses a fixed-dosing regimen
5 recommended by Eylea's label and covered by Claim 6?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And what document is that?

8 A. So this was a document that was -- there was some
9 testimony by a good friend of mine, Dr. Diana Do, and I
10 reviewed part of that in coming to my opinion about -- in this
11 case.

12 Q. Okay. Well, let's bring up PTX 1527.

13 And, Dr. Csaky, is this the declaration of Diana Do
14 you are referring to?

15 A. It is.

16 Q. And do you see highlighted above her name, "Inter
17 Partes Review Number 202100881"? Do you see that, Dr. Csaky?

18 A. I do.

19 Q. Do you understand that this is a declaration Dr. Do
20 submitted in a different litigation before the patent office
21 about a different Regeneron patent?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. And if we flip to the last page of the document,
24 that's page 67, do you see that she signed this declaration
25 under penalty of perjury?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Let's take a look at what she said. If we could go
3 to paragraph 137. I believe that's on page 54.

4 What does Dr. Do say in her signed declaration about
5 how doctors use Eylea to treat wet AMD?

6 A. Right. And, again, I want to make it clear that I
7 know Diana very well, and I value -- I think she's a phenomenal
8 doctor; so I really respect her opinion and her approach. And
9 so that's why it was important for me when I used this document
10 to come to my opinion.

11 And what she says here is that physicians, including
12 herself, typically and frequently treat wet AMD in particular
13 by administering one or more monthly doses subsequent to the
14 initial dose. And she calls these out, secondary doses,
15 approximately four weeks after the immediate preceding dose.

16 And then she goes on to say -- and, again, in the
17 second paragraph, she talks about patients following these
18 loading doses, she talks about physicians, including herself,
19 and that typically and frequently follow the monthly loading
20 doses by transitioning, like I have, from monthly or four-week
21 visits to bimonthly or eight-week visits and injections.

22 Q. If -- we just walked through the steps of Claim 6.
23 If a doctor uses Eylea in the way Dr. Do describes here, will
24 that doctor perform the method of Claim 6 for the treatment of
25 AMD?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes. That is my opinion.

2 Q. And just to be clear, this is what Dr. Do does and
3 what she says other physicians do. Is this also something you
4 do?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And I know that this document is going to surface
7 again in our later discussions, but I want to again see if we
8 can save a little time. And so I'm just going to ask does
9 Dr. Do also describe using the method of Claim 6 for
10 indications like DME and DR?

11 A. Yes. So she includes these other diseases. And when
12 I formed my opinion on these other diseases like diabetic
13 macular edema, DME, or diabetic retinopathy, she points out in
14 both cases that she too uses this approach of these initial
15 dose and secondary dosing and then transitions to these
16 bimonthly or eight-week visits and injections.

17 MS. KAYALI: I think we can take that down.

18 BY MS. KAYALI:

19 Q. Dr. Csaky, in the course of forming your opinions,
20 did you come across any other documents reflecting how
21 physicians use Eylea according to the method of Claim 6?

22 A. I did.

23 Q. Let's pull up PTX 586.

24 What is this document, Dr. Csaky?

25 A. So this is a manuscript in the public domain

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 published in 2023 by Mark Gallivan. And what Mark did here was
2 to review this database called the IRIS Registry.

3 Q. Well, if we turn to page 2 of Exhibit 586,
4 Plaintiff's Exhibit 586, can you explain to the Court what the
5 IRIS Registry is.

6 A. Yes. So the IRIS Registry is a database, very -- you
7 know, a kind of interesting database that the American Academy
8 of Ophthalmology started many years ago with the intent of
9 collecting real-world data -- anonymized real-world data. Many
10 of us have EHR, or electronic health records. And so the idea
11 was an anonymized way you could upload some of that data to a
12 central server and then have availability of that data to be
13 studied and reviewed.

14 Q. The records in the IRIS Registry, are those records
15 of patients that were treated in a clinical trial or records of
16 patients that were treated in just normal clinical practice?

17 A. These are primarily just in normal clinical practice.
18 So these are -- it's a voluntary registry and -- but it's been
19 very successful, and people want to be able to upload so we can
20 analyze what's happening in the real world.

21 Q. When the authors in Dr. Gallivan's papers -- so
22 Dr. Gallivan and his colleagues -- reviewed the IRIS Registry
23 for patients treated during their normal clinical practice, did
24 they find any patients who received an initial dose of
25 aflibercept, one or more secondary doses of aflibercept four

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 weeks after the preceding dose, and one or more tertiary doses
2 of aflibercept eight weeks after the preceding dose?

3 A. Yes. And so the purpose of this study was really
4 interesting. They wanted to -- we knew what the VIEW 1-VIEW 2
5 data -- clinical data showed. And so what the intent was to
6 say, okay, those are clinical trial patients. Can we find
7 patients in the real world that emulate those trial -- those
8 approaches that we took?

9 And of course one of the approaches in the VIEW 1 and
10 VIEW 2 was exactly what we're talking now, this approach where
11 we give monthly dosing and then switch to every-eight-week
12 dosing. So, indeed, they went through and they found a group
13 of patients that fulfilled that criteria.

14 Q. And if we skip ahead in the document to page 6, let's
15 pull up Table 5.

16 Dr. Csaky, how many patients in the IRIS Registry did
17 Dr. Gallivan and his colleagues find that received,
18 essentially, the method of Claim 6?

19 A. Right. So they went through -- and, of course, these
20 registries, you have to remember, when you're trying to emulate
21 a VIEW 1 or VIEW 2 trial data, there's lots of data that wasn't
22 available, but what was available was in some cases the dosing
23 schedule that these patients underwent. And in this case they
24 were able to identify 154 patients who were following exactly
25 the approach that was -- that we're discussing now, this

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 approach of giving, as it says right there, three initial
2 monthly doses and then converting 2 milligrams every two months
3 after that.

4 So these were a group of patients that they
5 identified in the real world who were being treated this way.

6 Q. Just to be very clear, if doctors administered
7 aflibercept 2 milligrams intravitreally every two months after
8 three initial monthly doses, did those patients receive the
9 method of Claim 6?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. One last question, Dr. Csaky. Does the IRIS Registry
12 contain data about every patient who's ever received Eylea?

13 A. No.

14 Q. So this is a sampling?

15 A. Yeah. So the IRIS Registry, again, it's a voluntary
16 approach. It's a significant portion, but it clearly does not
17 capture everybody who's being treated with Eylea in the real
18 world.

19 Q. So let's turn back to your slides. Let's look at
20 PDX 434.

21 Dr. Csaky, let's focus on the second question here on
22 the slide. In view of everything we've just discussed -- in
23 view of your own experience, your discussion with colleagues,
24 Dr. Do's declaration, the Gallivan article -- can we answer
25 Question 2?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes. I did answer Question 2.

2 Q. Well, then, what's the answer? What is your opinion
3 as to whether, if Mylan or Biocon market Yesafili in accordance
4 with the proposed labeling in PTX 3097, will some doctors
5 follow the label's instructions and use Yesafili to treat AMD
6 in a way that infringes Claim 6?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Any doubt in your mind about that?

9 A. No, no doubt.

10 Q. All right. Then let's turn to PDX 4.35. And I want
11 to take a step back.

12 Having answered both these questions, that is in view
13 of your opinion that Mylan or Biocon's label recommends that
14 doctors perform a method that infringes Claim 6 and in view of
15 your opinion that some doctors will, in fact, perform the
16 method of Claim 6 as a result of the recommendations in the
17 label, have you formed an opinion as to whether or not Mylan or
18 Biocon will induce infringement of Claim 6 if they sell
19 Yesafili?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And what is your opinion?

22 A. My opinion was that Mylan or Biocon will infringe
23 Claim 6 by promoting Yesafili.

24 Q. At this point I have some good news, which is that we
25 are done with Claim 6 for wet AMD.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 I also have some really good news, which is that we
2 get to do it again.

3 We are going to now discuss Claim 6 in the context of
4 DME and DR. And I promise we're going to do those far more
5 quickly and that we're going to take them together, but I just
6 want to set the stage.

7 So let's go back to the beginning of Claim 6. Can we
8 please put up the Mylan -- excuse me. That would be
9 Slide PDX 4.26. Thank you. Can we please bring back up the
10 Mylan/Biocon label on the right. Let's focus on the
11 "Indications and Usage" section for DME, and that's -- we're
12 looking now at page 1 of PTX 3097.

13 Dr. Csaky, we're taking it from the top here. If
14 Mylan or Biocon market Yesafili with the labeling that's
15 PTX 3097, will Mylan or -- will that label recommend that
16 doctors perform a method of treating an angiogenic eye disorder
17 in a patient in need thereof in the context of DME and DR?

18 A. Yes. The answer is yes.

19 Q. How do you know?

20 A. So, again, under the "Indications and Usage," we see
21 that Yesafili will be indicated for the treatment of patients
22 with diabetic macular edema and diabetic retinopathy.

23 Q. And are both of those angiogenic eye disorders?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. So excuse me. Looking back to PDX 4.26, can we check

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 off the first limitation of Claim 6, understanding that Mylan
2 and Biocon's label recommends doctors perform this step?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Right. We're going to be talking about both DME and
5 DR at the same time for the next few questions. So I want to,
6 again going back to the difference between the highlighting and
7 the full label, see if we can move this along more quickly.

8 Let's pull up the full dosage and administration
9 instructions for DME. That's on page 2 of 3097.

10 Dr. Csaky, how does Mylan or Biocon recommend that
11 doctors use Yesafili for the treatment of DME?

12 A. Yes. Under "Dosage and Administration," it
13 recommends that Yesafili be given 2 milligrams by intravitreal
14 injection every four weeks, or approximately 28 days monthly,
15 for the first five injections.

16 Q. And just like I asked for AMD, can we find this
17 information in the highlights of the prescribing information as
18 well?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Let's take a look at that on page 1.

21 Dr. Csaky, is there any difference in how the full
22 dosage and administration section recommends that doctors use
23 Yesafili to treat DME and how the highlights of the prescribing
24 information recommend that doctors use Yesafili to treat DME?

25 A. No.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Sorry. Let's turn to DR. Can we bring up the full
2 dosage and administration instructions for DR on page 3 of
3 PTX 3097.

4 Dr. Csaky, on the right we now have the highlights of
5 the prescribing information under "Dosage and Administration"
6 for DR. That's page 1 of 3097.

7 So do you see we have page 3 on the left and page 1
8 on the right?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Same question. First, how does Mylan/Biocon's label
11 instruct doctors to administer Yesafili for the treatment of
12 DR?

13 A. Again, it recommends that the treatment for DR be
14 2 milligrams intravitreal injection every four weeks for the
15 first five injections.

16 Q. And comparing that to the highlights of the
17 prescribing information on the right, is there any difference
18 at all between recommended dose on page 3 and the recommended
19 dose on page 1?

20 A. No.

21 Q. So we're going to use the highlights of the
22 prescribing information moving forward since it's going to be a
23 little faster, but do you have any problem with that?

24 A. No.

25 Q. One more question about the highlights of the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 prescribing information here.

2 For both DME and DR -- and we're look at PTX 3097,
3 page 1 -- how many bullet points are there under the highlights
4 of prescribing information for DME and DR?

5 A. There's two bullet points.

6 Q. Which one of those are you going to focus your
7 testimony on today?

8 A. My testimony is on the first one.

9 Q. Why?

10 A. Well, again, it's before this was -- this -- it
11 states the recommended dose for Yesafili in this bullet point.

12 Q. How many recommended dosing regimens are there for
13 the treatment of DME and DR using Yesafili and Yesafili's
14 label?

15 A. Only one.

16 Q. And that's the first bullet point here, right?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Okay. With that background out of the way, let's go
19 back to your slides and look at the next limitation of Claim 6
20 in the context of DME and DR.

21 Can we pull up PDX 427. Thank you.

22 Dr. Csaky, we just checked off the first box a minute
23 ago. What's the next limitation of Claim 6?

24 A. So the next limitation is that it be administered by
25 intravitreal injection with a single initial dose of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 2 milligrams of aflibercept.

2 Q. Does the Mylan or Biocon label recommend that doctors
3 administer an intravitreal injection of a single initial dose
4 of 2 milligrams of aflibercept for the treatment of DME and the
5 treatment of DR?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Let's bring back up page 1 of PTX 3097.

8 And, Dr. Csaky, can you show us where that
9 recommendation is.

10 A. Yes. Right there it says under the dosage and
11 administration, the recommended dose of Yesafili is
12 2 milligrams administered by intravitreal injection every four
13 weeks for the first five injections.

14 Q. Same question as the last time around. Which of
15 those intravitreal injections every four weeks for the first
16 five injections -- try that again. Which of those first five
17 injections is the single initial dose?

18 A. The first one.

19 Q. Fair enough.

20 Can we check off the box, then, that Mylan or Biocon
21 recommends doctors perform the second step of Claim 6 in the
22 context of DME and DR?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Let's turn to PDX 28, which we have up on the screen.

25 Dr. Csaky, what are the next two limitations you'll

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 address in the context of DME and DR?

2 A. Right. The next two limitations are that there be
3 one or more secondary doses of 2 milligrams and that the
4 secondary doses be administered every four weeks following the
5 immediate preceding dose.

6 Q. Does PTX 3097, the proposed labeling for Yesafili,
7 recommend doctors perform these steps when treating DME and DR
8 using Yesafili?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Let's bring back up the label.

11 Looking at page 1, Dr. Csaky, familiar question,
12 where do you see that recommendation?

13 A. Right. It says here again that the dose is
14 2 milligrams by intravitreal injections every four weeks for
15 the first five injections.

16 Q. Which of those first five injections, Dr. Csaky,
17 correspond to the one or more secondary doses of 2 milligrams
18 aflibercept in the claims?

19 A. The last four injections.

20 Q. Does Mylan's label recommend that those four
21 secondary doses be administered approximately four weeks
22 following the immediately preceding dose?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Where does it recommend that?

25 A. It says specifically that they should be administered

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 every four weeks.

2 Q. Is that a recommendation both for the treatment of
3 DME and DR?

4 A. Yes, for both.

5 Q. So turning back to Slide 28, can we check off the
6 boxes that Mylan or Biocon's label recommends the secondary
7 doses limitations of Claim 6 in the context of DME and DR?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. Let's turn to Slide 429.

10 What's the next limitation of Claim 6, Dr. Csaky?

11 A. So the next limitation is two-part. It says that it
12 should be followed by one or more tertiary doses of
13 2 milligrams and that these tertiary doses be administered
14 every eight weeks.

15 Q. Let's bring back up the label. That's PTX 3097 at
16 page 1.

17 Dr. Csaky, this proposed labeling for Yesafili
18 recommends that doctors administer, after that initial dose and
19 the secondary doses, one or more tertiary doses of 2 milligrams
20 aflibercept wherein each tertiary dose is administered
21 approximately eight weeks following the immediately preceding
22 dose.

23 A. Yes. It says exactly that these injections should
24 be -- after five injections should be followed by 2 milligrams
25 every eight weeks.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And, Dr. Csaky, I noticed when you turned to face
2 your screen, sometimes your microphone slips away from your
3 face. It might be helpful to Madam Court Reporter if we try to
4 keep that in front of you.

5 So sorry. Let me just -- I want to make sure I heard
6 the answer to that last question.

7 Does the label recommend one or more tertiary doses
8 of 2 milligrams aflibercept wherein each tertiary dose is
9 administered approximately eight weeks following the preceding
10 one?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Can you point that out to us, please.

13 A. Yes. It says, again, right under the dosage and
14 administration, it's 2 milligrams via intravitreal injection
15 once every eight weeks.

16 Q. Is that for both the treatment of DME and DR?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. Can we check off those boxes, then? Does the label
19 recommend doctors perform both of the tertiary dose steps?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. Turning to the next slide then, that's PTX 430, are
22 we -- will you perform any analysis of this limitation in the
23 new DME, DR context?

24 A. No.

25 Q. And why is that?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. So again if -- again, I've been told that this is a
2 nonlimiting claim, and so it was not included in my analysis.

3 Q. Just to be clear, when you say a "nonlimiting claim,"
4 do you mean a nonlimiting portion of Claim 6 -- limitation of
5 Claim 6?

6 A. Right.

7 Q. Let's move on to PDX 4.31.

8 Is it the same story, Dr. Csaky, for aflibercept
9 formulated in isotonic solution as we talked about in AMD?

10 A. Correct. I did not include that as I am not a
11 formulation expert.

12 Q. Okay. So I'm going to ask you to make the same
13 assumption I did last time, which is for the remainder of your
14 testimony about Claim 6, please assume that Dr. Trout will
15 testify that the aflibercept recommended to be used by
16 Mylan/Biocon's label is formulated as an isotonic solution.

17 Can you make that assumption?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Let's turn to PDX 4.32.

20 What's left, Dr. Csaky? Anything else in Claim 6 we
21 need to cover?

22 A. Nothing.

23 Q. Have you hit all the limitations?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Turning back to your questions, PDX 433.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 In view of what we just reviewed in PTX 3097, does
2 the proposed labeling for Yesafili recommend that doctors
3 perform the method of Claim 6 for the treatment of DR and DME?

4 A. Yes. My opinion was yes.

5 Q. Let's turn to Question Number 2. We talked about it
6 in the context of AMD already, about whether doctors will
7 actually follow the recommendations in Yesafili's label in the
8 event Yesafili is marketed.

9 Is your opinion the same for DME and DR?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. And what was the answer to Question Number 2? Sorry.

12 A. The answer was yes, that there will be some doctors
13 who will perform these methods.

14 Q. Does your opinion, again, relate to the way that
15 doctors currently use Eylea?

16 A. Correct.

17 Q. Let's bring back up PTX 917 on the left and PTX 3097
18 on the right.

19 Dr. Csaky, does Regeneron recommend that doctors use
20 Eylea to treat DME and DR in the same way that Mylan or Biocon
21 recommends that doctors use Yesafili to treat DME and DR?

22 A. Yes. I see no difference.

23 Q. In view of that and in view of your testimony
24 reviewing Mylan's label regarding -- excuse me. Let me try
25 that again.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 In view of your testimony that the Mylan or Biocon
2 label recommends that doctors perform every method of Claim 6
3 for the treatment of DME and DR, is it also the case that
4 Regeneron's label recommends doctors perform every step of the
5 method of Claim 6 for DME and DR?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Let me ask again. Do doctors follow this label
8 recommendation for treatment of DME and treatment of DR when
9 they use Eylea?

10 A. Yes. As I said, you know, in certain circumstances,
11 in certain patients, there are reasons that some doctors will
12 use this approach for the treatment of diabetic macular edema
13 and diabetic retinopathy.

14 Q. Have you personally used this method for the
15 treatment of DME and DR?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Have you personally used the method of Claim 6 for
18 the treatment of DME and DR?

19 A. Yes. I have tried -- I have treated patients with
20 diabetic macular edema and diabetic retinopathy using an
21 approach like this in some patients.

22 Q. And what are the circumstances that lead you to do
23 that?

24 A. Well, you know, again, as we talked about at the very
25 beginning, what's critical in diabetic macular edema is that

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 there's more VEGF that's usually present. And so, again, this
2 idea that we want to give multiple injections more than we do
3 for the neovascular AMD has been well-supported.

4 And so again, in certain cases where you really want
5 to be able to communicate here's going to be our approach, it's
6 very common to say we're going to try five injections at the
7 very beginning, especially for someone with diabetic macular
8 edema; and then, of course, if they respond well, then you want
9 to start extending them to a longer period, like eight weeks.

10 In terms of diabetic retinopathy -- so again these
11 are patients sometimes with both, and we know that, again, the
12 alternative for diabetic retinopathy can be laser
13 photocoagulation. It's a destructive procedure. And so for
14 certain patients, they would prefer and my colleagues now are
15 extending -- they're going more and more to using this type of
16 approach for treating diabetic retinopathy in particular.

17 Q. So you said the alternative can be laser. How does
18 that work?

19 A. So laser is a destructive procedure. It's basically
20 a light, and you shine it into the eyes with patients with more
21 advanced diabetic retinopathy. And it was shown 50 years ago
22 that, if you destroy the retina -- surprising, but if you
23 destroy the retina in the periphery, that causes some of that
24 retinopathy to regress.

25 And while it's still in many ways a very effective

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 treatment for a lot of patients, again, you want to be able to
2 offer patients alternatives. And so this approach of using a
3 proven way to regress the retinopathy by using this approach is
4 becoming an attractive option for patients.

5 Q. And just to be very clear, Dr. Csaky, you have used
6 the method of Claim 6 to treat patients with DME and DR?

7 A. Yes. So in the past I have treated patients who have
8 DME and DR, and in using this approach, it's been very
9 effective.

10 Q. And just referencing back to Dr. Do's declaration,
11 did she also explain that she and others have used the method
12 of Claim 6 to treat patients with DME and DR?

13 A. Yes. And so that was -- again, I know Dr. Do very
14 well, and I respect her thoughts and opinions. And so I used
15 that as well to kind of confirm in addition to, you know, other
16 discussions with other doctors and hearing about what their
17 approaches have been, it was just another step that I used to
18 help confirm and form my opinion that, again, some doctors in
19 certain patients under certain conditions will use this
20 approach.

21 Q. And you mentioned conversations with other doctors.
22 Have you had a chance to understand how the retinal
23 community uses Eylea to treat DME and DR?

24 A. Yeah. In certain situations I've been on, you know,
25 committees where we actually had some very intense discussions

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 about the utility of Eylea, especially -- again, in the
2 community, Eylea -- especially for diabetic macular edema and
3 its adjoining entity, diabetic retinopathy, there's been some
4 actual evidence that in certain severe cases, Eylea seems to
5 have a better efficacy. And so there's a fair amount of, I
6 think, thought in the community that Eylea, for these types of
7 conditions, again, is the best anti-VEGF drug out there.

8 MS. LESKO: Objection, Your Honor. I've been trying
9 to give some leeway, but these opinions are going very far
10 afield of the opinions that are in his report. I think he has
11 one sentence in his report about how the community or doctors
12 would prescribe Eylea.

13 THE COURT: Understood. It's overruled. That
14 opinion's been disclosed, and as we discussed earlier, Dr. Do's
15 declaration and other information is information upon which
16 this witness has relied in forming an expert opinion.
17 Overruled.

18 MS. KAYALI: Thank you, Your Honor.

19 BY MS. KAYALI:

20 Q. So, Dr. Csaky, I think we've now covered your
21 experience and we've covered your conversations with other
22 doctors about their experience. We talked about Dr. Do's
23 declaration.

24 I want to just briefly mention, we talked earlier
25 about the Gallivan article, right? Is the Gallivan article

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 limited to AMD?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. Let's set that aside, then, and turn back to Question
4 Number 2 on PDX 4034.

5 In view of your own personal experience, your
6 conversations with colleagues, Dr. Do's declaration, what is
7 your opinion as to whether some doctors will use Eylea in
8 accordance -- excuse me. Try that again.

9 In view of your own personal experience, your own
10 conversations with colleagues, and Dr. Do's declaration and the
11 recommendations in the proposed Yesafili labeling, what is your
12 conclusion as to whether some doctors will use Yesafili in
13 accordance with its label to treat DME and DR and perform the
14 method of Claim 6 if Yesafili is on the market?

15 A. Yeah. My conclusion that some doctors under certain
16 circumstances will use these infringing methods was yes.

17 Q. Then let's turn to PDX 4.35. And, again, let's take
18 a step back.

19 In view of your opinion that Mylan or Biocon's label
20 recommends that doctors perform the method of Claim 6 to treat
21 DME, DR and in view of your opinion that some doctors will, in
22 fact, perform the method of Claim 6 in order to treat DME or DR
23 as a result of those recommendations in the label, what is your
24 opinion as to whether or not Mylan or Biocon will induce
25 infringement of Claim 6 if they sell Yesafili?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. My conclusion was that they will infringe on Claim 6.

2 Q. And I just want to be clear for the record. When you
3 say "they will infringe on Claim 6," do you know that Mylan or
4 Biocon will induce the infringement of Claim 6?

5 A. Yes. Yes, Mylan and Biocon will induce the
6 infringement of Claim 6.

7 Q. Okay. We're really done with Claim 6 now.

8 We're going to move on to Claim 25 of the '572
9 patent. We're one down, three to go, but it gets faster from
10 here.

11 Let's turn to page 25 of PTX 3.

12 Dr. Csaky, what does Claim 25 of the '572 patent
13 require?

14 A. Yes. The 25 method is a method of Claim 15 -- so
15 it's dependent on 15 -- wherein four secondary doses are
16 administered to the patient.

17 Q. And let's bring back up PDX 4.36. Bring back up your
18 slides and look at Slide 36.

19 Just like you did for Claim 6, have you assisted in
20 preparing a slide that shows how every limitation of Claim 5
21 feeds into Claim 25 when it's rewritten in independent form?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. So do you understand that we need to review each of
24 these limitations in order to assess infringement of Claim 25?

25 A. Yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Let's focus on the language of the rewritten
2 independent form of Claim 25. And that's on PDX 4.36. And
3 let's turn to the checklist form on PDX 4.37 -- excuse me --
4 PDX 4.38.

5 Dr. Csaky, we're going to -- again, I'm going to ask
6 you to address the first of your two questions regarding
7 infringement, which is whether Mylan or Biocon's label
8 encourages, recommends, or promotes infringement of Claim 25.
9 Okay?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. What is the first requirement of Claim 25?

12 A. The first requirement is that it be method for
13 treating diabetic macular edema.

14 Q. Let's bring back up PTX 3097.

15 Let me ask a familiar question, Dr. Csaky. Does
16 Mylan or Biocon's label recommend that doctors use Yesafili to
17 treat diabetic macular edema?

18 A. Yes. It specifically indicates -- says that it's
19 indicated for the treatment of patients with diabetic macular
20 edema.

21 Q. Can we check off the first box in Claim 25 suggesting
22 that Mylan or Biocon's label recommends that doctors perform
23 the first limitation of Claim 25?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Dr. Csaky, let's turn, then, to PDX 4039. What is

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 the next limitation of Claim 25 you'll analyze?

2 A. The next limitation is that there are a single
3 initial dose of 2-milligram aflibercept be given.

4 Q. Let's bring back up PTX 3097.

5 Does the Mylan Biocon label instruct sequentially
6 administering to the patient a single initial dose of
7 2 milligrams of aflibercept?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. Where is that recommendation?

10 A. It says the recommended dose for Yesafili is
11 2 milligrams administered by intravitreal injection every four
12 weeks for the first five injections.

13 Q. Okay. Same question as before. Which of those first
14 five injections is the single initial dose?

15 A. The first one.

16 Q. So can we check off the box that Mylan -- the
17 proposed labeling for Yesafili recommends that doctors perform
18 the method of sequentially administering to the patient a
19 single initial dose of 2 milligrams of aflibercept?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. Let's turn to the next set of limitations. It's on
22 PDX 4.40.

23 What is the next set of limitations you'll analyze
24 for infringement?

25 A. The next set of limitations are the secondary doses,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 2 milligrams to be administered every four weeks, and these are
2 four secondary doses.

3 Q. You mentioned four secondary doses. Is that the last
4 limitation of Claim 25 there?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. That's a difference from Claim 6, right?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. So let's bring back up the label, PTX 3097. After
9 that first initial dose proposed -- does the proposed labeling
10 for Yesafili recommend that doctors administer to patients,
11 after the first single initial dose, one or more secondary
12 doses of 2 milligrams of aflibercept wherein each secondary
13 dose is administered to the patient by intravitreal injection
14 approximately four weeks following the immediately preceding
15 dose and wherein four secondary doses are administered to the
16 patient?

17 A. Yeah. It explicitly says that, again, every four
18 weeks for the -- every four weeks for the first five
19 injections.

20 Q. And you said every four weeks for the first five
21 injections. Which of those five injections correspond to the
22 secondary doses of the claims?

23 A. The last four.

24 Q. So then how many secondary doses does the proposed
25 labeling for Yesafili recommend?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Four.

2 Q. How frequently -- how often does Yesafili's label
3 recommend that doctors administer those four secondary doses?

4 A. Every four weeks.

5 Q. So can we check off the box that Mylan's label
6 recommends the secondary dose requirements of Claim 25?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Let's do that, then, and turn to the tertiary dose
9 limitations.

10 What does Claim 25 require in terms of tertiary
11 doses?

12 A. Yes. There are two requirements: 2 milligrams be
13 provided, one or more, and that those be administered every
14 eight weeks.

15 Q. Let's bring back up the label, PTX 3097, at page 1.

16 After the single initial dose and after the four
17 secondary doses, does the proposed labeling for Yesafili
18 recommend that doctors administer one or more tertiary doses of
19 2 milligrams of aflibercept wherein each tertiary dose is
20 administered to the patient by intravitreal injection
21 approximately eight weeks following the immediately preceding
22 dose?

23 A. Yes. It says again under the dosage and
24 administration, "followed by 2 milligrams via intravitreal
25 injection once every eight weeks."

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Which of those injections once every eight weeks
2 corresponds to the tertiary doses of the claims?

3 A. All of them.

4 Q. Any of them that are given?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. So then can we check off the box that Claim 25
7 recommends the tertiary dose steps of Claim 25?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. Let me try that again.

10 Can we check off the box that Mylan or Biocon's label
11 recommends the tertiary dose steps of Claim 25?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Thank you.

14 What else is missing -- are we missing anything from
15 Claim 25? What else does it require?

16 A. We don't miss -- everything's there.

17 Q. So then turning back to your question on PDX 4.43,
18 what's the answer to Question Number 1? Does Mylan or Biocon's
19 label recommend that doctors perform every step of the method
20 of Claim 25 of the '572 patent and thereby infringe Claim 25 of
21 the '572 patent?

22 A. In my opinion, the Mylan and Biocon label does
23 encourage, recommend, or promote doctors to perform a method
24 that infringes.

25 Q. And that's Claim 25, right?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. That's Claim 25.

2 Q. So can we check off that box?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. All right. Let's turn, then, to Question Number 2.

5 Thinking back to your earlier testimony, Dr. Csaky, if Yesafili
6 is marketed, will some doctors actually use Yesafili as its
7 label tells them to and thereby perform the method of Claim 25?

8 A. In my opinion, yes.

9 Q. How do you know?

10 A. Again, similar to the evidence or the basis for my
11 opinions in the previous discussions, you know, these are an
12 approach that I have used in a patient or some patients. And,
13 again, in discussion with my colleagues, we've also had
14 discussions about these types of approaches.

15 And, again, very similar to the discussion we had
16 last time about diabetic macular edema and the need for a
17 series of injections, five injections, and knowing that that
18 has the evidence base to give the best outcomes in some
19 patients, some doctors will use this approach.

20 Q. And you mentioned the first five injections monthly.
21 Do you also use the method where you switch to eight-week
22 dosing after that?

23 A. Yes. That's very common. If a patient does well
24 after those injections, as we talked about, you want to start
25 to extend that interval. And what -- this label, based off the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 trial data, suggests that you can do that safely.

2 Q. And so I just want to be very clear, Dr. Csaky. Have
3 you used Eylea in a -- according to the method of Claim 25 to
4 treat DME and DR?

5 A. Yes. In the past I have definitely used this method.

6 Q. And are you -- through your conversations with
7 colleagues, are you aware that other doctors also use the
8 method of Claim 25 in order to treat DME and DR?

9 A. Yeah. In fact, like I said, we've been on various
10 committees about approaches to DME and how best to treat,
11 especially more severe, DME. And this is an approach that I've
12 had doctors talk to me about as a method, again, in some cases
13 with some patients they've used.

14 Q. And that's with Eylea, right?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. And let's take a look at -- again, at how Regeneron
17 recommends doctors use Eylea and how Mylan or Biocon recommends
18 doctors use Yesafili in order to treat DME. Actually, let me
19 try that again.

20 Have we already looked at how Regeneron recommends
21 that doctors use Eylea and compared it to how Mylan or Biocon
22 recommends doctors use Yesafili in the context of DME?

23 A. We haven't done the comparison, no. You haven't
24 showed me that.

25 Q. Oh. Well, then, let's take a step back because I

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 thought we did that in Claim 6, but we can certainly do it.

2 A. We did that in Claim 6, yes.

3 Q. Let's just take a look. Give me one moment.

4 Can we pull up PTX 917 on the left. And can we call
5 out the highlights of prescribing information for DME and DR.
6 And then put up PTX 3097 on the right and call out the same
7 information.

8 So, Dr. Csaky, just to be very short, is there any
9 difference in how Regeneron recommends that doctors use Eylea
10 to treat DME and DR shown in PTX 917 on the left when compared
11 with how Mylan or Biocon would recommend doctors use Yesafili
12 to treat DME and DR on the right?

13 A. No.

14 Q. No difference?

15 A. No difference.

16 Q. Okay. So in view of the fact that we've just walked
17 through your opinion that Mylan or Biocon's label recommends
18 doctors perform the method of Claim 25, if doctors used Eylea
19 according to the label, have they also performed the method of
20 Claim 25?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. So in your opinion, if doctors use Eylea according to
23 the method of Claim 25 and if doctors will use Yesafili in the
24 same way, does that inform your opinion as to whether some
25 doctors will perform the method of Claim 25 using Yesafili?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And in the context of Claim 25, we mentioned that
3 that last limitation, the four secondary doses, is different
4 than Claim 6. I just want to be clear.

5 When you say you have used Eylea to treat patients
6 with DME and DR according to the method of Claim 25, have you
7 also done that four secondary doses step?

8 A. Yes. In certain cases where there is severe DME, you
9 need five injections, multiple injections. And, again, having,
10 as I said before, that confidence that five injections gets us
11 to a good place both anatomically and visually is a nice
12 approach to take in some patients.

13 Q. So you've performed the method of Claim 25 using
14 Eylea in patients with DME and DR?

15 A. Correct.

16 Q. And when you say your colleagues have used the method
17 of Claim 25 to treat DME and DR, that's also including that
18 four secondary doses step, right?

19 A. Right. Right. That's again a very common challenge
20 we have in diabetic macular edema, that in certain cases you
21 need these multiple injections to get the retina to really
22 respond.

23 Q. So your colleagues have -- you're aware that your
24 colleagues have performed the method in DME and DR, the method
25 of Claim 25?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Correct. As I said, when we talk about this -- the
2 connection and how we approach these diseases, we want to be
3 able to get -- especially in diabetic disease, we want to get
4 it as responsive as possible. And so we really want to be able
5 to ensure that we get good regression of the diabetic
6 retinopathy and good resolution of the diabetic macular edema.

7 Q. Let's head back to your slide PDX 4.45.

8 THE COURT: Counsel, before we do that, are we at a
9 good spot to break or do you have a couple more on this
10 particular issue?

11 MS. KAYALI: I think we could close out this claim,
12 Your Honor. That might be advisable, and then we can break.

13 THE COURT: I would concur. Go right ahead.

14 BY MS. KAYALI:

15 Q. Let's head back to PDX 4.45. Am I right, then, that
16 your answer is -- or what is your answer to Question Number 2?

17 A. Yeah. The answer -- the opinion that I formed after
18 reviewing all of the evidence that I was able to take in my own
19 approach to patients with diabetic macular edema in particular
20 and also my colleagues and their now approaches to diabetic
21 macular edema and diabetic retinopathy, the answer to this was
22 yes.

23 Q. So taking a step back, then, in view of claim --
24 excuse me -- Claim 25, in view of your opinion that Mylan or
25 Biocon's label recommends that doctors perform the method of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Claim 25 and in view of your opinion that some doctors will, in
2 fact, perform the method of Claim 25 as a result, have you
3 formed an opinion as to whether or not, if Mylan or Biocon
4 markets Yesafili, they will induce infringement of Claim 25?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And what did you conclude?

7 A. My conclusion was that Mylan/Biocon will induce
8 infringement on Claim 25.

9 MS. KAYALI: With that, Your Honor, we've reached the
10 end of the claim.

11 THE COURT: Understood. I jumped the gun a little
12 bit. My apologies, Counsel.

13 We'll go ahead and take our midday break at this
14 point. Let's be ready to pick back up at 1:00. That will give
15 everybody here 40 minutes or so. We can resume then.

16 As I mentioned, I think yesterday, we do have a
17 proceeding that we need to take up during our break. So if I
18 could ask lead counsel at the trial tables just to stack some
19 things up out of the way. That shouldn't take all but a minute
20 or two, but we do need the courtroom for that.

21 Doctor, you remain on your own. They're permitted to
22 feed you, and I hope that they do. But, otherwise, you're
23 still without a country. Thank you, sir.

24 We'll stand at ease until 1:00. Thank you all very
25 much.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 (A recess was taken from 12:22 p.m. to
2 1:08 p.m.)

3 THE COURT: Doctor, are you ready to resume, sir?

4 THE WITNESS: Yes.

5 THE COURT: Could I ask you to pull that mic back
6 down. There you go. Perfect.

7 All right. Counsel?

8 MS. KAYALI: Thank you.

9 BY MS. KAYALI:

10 Q. Dr. Csaky, let's pick up where we left off. I think
11 we ended with Claim 25. So I've got Slide 45 up here.

12 And am I right that you had answered yes to Question
13 Number 2? In your opinions, at least some doctors will perform
14 the method of Claim 25 in administering Yesafili to treat DME
15 in accordance with Claim 25 as a result of Mylan's label?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. As a result of that opinion, did you conclude that
18 Mylan will, in fact, induce infringement of Claim 25?

19 A. Yes. My opinion was that Mylan will induce
20 infringement on Claim 25.

21 Q. Okay. Let's turn to Claim 11. We're two down, two
22 to go. And we're turning to the '601 patent.

23 Dr. Csaky, this is PTX 1. Do you recognize this
24 document?

25 A. I do.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And what is it?

2 A. This is the U.S. patent -- and we're going to call
3 this the '601 patent -- for the use of VEGF antagonists to
4 treat angiogenic eye disorders.

5 Q. In the course of your work on this case, have you
6 reviewed the '601 patent in full?

7 A. I did.

8 Q. Let's go take a look at the first of the asserted
9 claims in the '601 patent. That's Claim 11. This is page 21
10 of PTX 1.

11 What does Claim 11 of the '601 patent require?

12 A. Claim 11 again is a dependent claim. And it is
13 dependent on the method of Claim 10, but in and of itself it
14 has a limitation with an approximately every four weeks,
15 comprising approximately every 28 days or approximately
16 monthly.

17 Q. Let's bring up your slides again and compare this to
18 PDX 4.46. Dr. Csaky, just like for the last two claims, do you
19 understand that Claim 11, because it depends from Claim 10,
20 therefore incorporates all the limitations of Claim 10?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And just like before, have you made a slide that
23 attempts to rewrite Claim 11 in independent form?

24 A. Yes. Correct.

25 Q. So we're going to focus on the independent form of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Claim 11 in assessing infringement.

2 Let's turn to some familiar questions on PDX 4.47.

3 Dr. Csaky, in the context of Claim 11 we're going to
4 march through the same two questions we have all day. And the
5 first one of those is does Mylan or Biocon's label encourage,
6 recommend, or promote doctors to perform methods that infringe
7 Claim 11 of the '601 patent?

8 So let's jump in, PDX 4.48. Dr. Csaky, what is the
9 first limitation of Claim 11 of the '601 patent that you
10 analyzed?

11 A. The first limitation is a method for treating
12 diabetic macular edema.

13 Q. Let's pull up PTX 3097.

14 Dr. Csaky, does Mylan's or Biocon's proposed labeling
15 for Yesafili, PTX 3097, recommend that doctors use Yesafili in
16 a method for treating diabetic macular edema in a patient in
17 need thereof?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Where does it do that?

20 A. Yes. It says under indications and dosage you can
21 clearly see that Yesafili is indicated for the treatment of
22 patients with diabetic macular edema.

23 Q. We're looking at page 1 of PTX 3097. And, Dr. Csaky,
24 I think I heard you say indications and dosage. Is that the
25 title of this section?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Do you see the words "indication and usage"?

3 A. I'm sorry. Indications and usage, right.

4 Q. So the recommendation that Mylan -- or excuse me.

5 The recommendation in PTX 3097 that doctors use Yesafili to

6 treat a patient in need of treatment for diabetic macular

7 edema, that's in the indications and uses section on PTX 3097,

8 page 1, right?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Can we check off that box, then? Can we check off

11 that Mylan's label or Biocon's label recommends that doctors

12 perform the first step of the method of Claim 11?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. Let's go to the second one. What are we looking at

15 here?

16 A. Right. So there are now two limitations here. One

17 is that there's an effective amount of aflibercept, which is

18 2 milligrams. And it's approximately every four weeks for the

19 first five injections. And then there's a further stipulation

20 that this approximately every four weeks comprises

21 approximately every 28 days or approximately monthly.

22 Q. Let's pull PTX 3097 back up.

23 Dr. Csaky, does PTX 3097, proposed labeling for

24 Yesafili, recommend that doctors administer Yesafili

25 intravitreally in an effective amount of aflibercept, which is

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 2 milligrams approximately every four weeks, for the first five
2 injections?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Where does it make that recommendation?

5 A. In the very first bullet point, the recommended dose
6 is 2 milligrams administered by intravitreal injection every
7 four weeks for the first five injections.

8 Q. The claim states an effective amount of aflibercept
9 which is 2 milligrams. Do you see that?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. Is that an effective amount -- is 2 milligrams an
12 effective amount of aflibercept?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. How do you know?

15 A. We know that from both multiple clinical trials as
16 well as our own clinical experience.

17 Q. And the first five injections that are recommended in
18 the proposed labeling for Yesafili, how frequently does
19 Yesafili's label recommend that those be given?

20 A. Those -- on the label it's approximately every 28
21 days, or monthly, four weeks.

22 Q. So when Yesafili's label recommends that doctors
23 administer Yesafili every four weeks (approximately every 28
24 days, monthly) for the first five injections, does Yesafili's
25 proposed label recommend that doctors meet that final

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 limitation of Claim 11 wherein approximately every four weeks
2 comprises approximately every 28 days or approximately monthly?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Let's turn back to PDX 450.

5 Excuse me, Dr. Csaky. I should have asked you.

6 Can we check off those boxes --

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. -- for the first five injections being administered
9 approximately every four weeks, approximately every 28 days, or
10 monthly?

11 A. Yes, we can check those off.

12 Q. All right. What's the next limitation you addressed?

13 A. The last limitation is that it be followed by
14 2 milligrams approximately once every eight weeks, or once
15 every two months.

16 Q. Let's bring back up the label. That's PTX 3097.

17 Dr. Csaky, does the proposed labeling for Yesafili
18 recommend that doctors, after those first five injections,
19 administer Yesafili in 2-milligram doses approximately once
20 every eight weeks, or once every two months?

21 A. Yes, it says that specifically under dosage and
22 administration, followed by 2 milligrams via intravitreal
23 injection once every eight weeks, or two months.

24 Q. So can we check off the method -- excuse me -- that
25 the limitation requiring 2 milligrams approximately once every

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 eight weeks, or once every two months, is satisfied?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. Looking at PDX 4051, Dr. Csaky, what else does
4 Claim 11 require?

5 A. Nothing else.

6 Q. Have we caught all the limitations?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Does Mylan or Biocon's label recommend that doctors
9 perform them all?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. So turning back to your questions, let's look at
12 PDX 4.52. What's the answer to Question Number 1? Does Mylan
13 or Biocon's label encourage, recommend, or promote doctors to
14 infringe Claim 11 of the '601 patent?

15 A. Again, in my opinion, the answer to that first
16 question is yes.

17 Q. Let's talk about Question Number 2.

18 Dr. Csaky, you've spent quite a bit of time, I think,
19 explaining in your opinion how -- how doctors use Eylea and how
20 doctors will use Yesafili.

21 In your opinion, if Mylan or Biocon markets Yesafili
22 with the label that's reflected in PTX 3097, will some doctors
23 actually do what that label says and use Yesafili to perform
24 the method of Claim 11?

25 A. Yes. In my opinion, there will be some doctors in

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 some situations who will perform that method.

2 Q. And is that substantially for the reasons which
3 you've already explained?

4 A. Correct.

5 Q. Now, the final limitation of Claim 11 requires that
6 the first -- wherein approximately every four weeks comprises
7 approximately every 28 days or approximately monthly. When you
8 were describing your practice and the practice of other
9 physicians with whom you've spoken and explaining that they use
10 methods of treating patients with DME using Eylea with five
11 monthly injections followed by every-eight-week dosing, do you
12 or do those doctors administer those five monthly doses
13 approximately every 28 days, or approximately monthly?

14 A. Yes. I would say that we often do this approximately
15 every 28 days.

16 Q. Or approximately monthly?

17 A. Or approximately monthly, correct.

18 Q. Let's take a look quickly at the Eylea label compared
19 to the Yesafili label. And we're going to put PTX 3097 on the
20 right here and PTX 917 on the left.

21 Does the Eylea label contain language regarding
22 administering the first five injections approximately every 28
23 days, or approximately monthly?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. And so if physicians follow the Eylea label, do they

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 administer the first five injections approximately every 28
2 days, or approximately monthly?

3 A. Yes. In some cases, they do.

4 Q. So when they follow the label, they do that. And in
5 your opinion, do some people do that?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. So does the Eylea label also recommend that doctors
8 use Eylea to treat DME according to the method of Claim 11?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Well, then, let's see if we can turn to Question
11 Number 2. That's Slide 54 -- let's back up one -- excuse me --
12 slide 53.

13 Dr. Csaky, you have your own experience with Eylea
14 that you've described. In view of your conversations with
15 colleagues about how they use Eylea, what is your opinion as to
16 whether, if Yesafili is marketed, some doctors will administer
17 Yesafili according to the recommendations in its label and
18 thereby infringe Claim 11?

19 A. Yes, my opinion is that there will be, again, some
20 doctors who will perform this method as described.

21 Q. Let's take a step back on Claim 11, then.

22 In view of your opinion that Mylan or Biocon's label
23 recommends that doctors perform the method of Claim 11 and in
24 view of your opinion that some doctors will, in fact, perform
25 the method of Claim 11 as a result, have you formed an opinion

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 as to whether or not Mylan or Biocon will induce infringement
2 of Claim 11 if they sell Yesafili?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. What did you conclude?

5 A. Yes, in my opinion, Mylan/Biocon will infringe on
6 Claim 11 by marketing Yesafili.

7 Q. And just so the record is clear, when you say
8 infringe, do you mean induce infringement?

9 A. Induce infringement.

10 Q. Okay. Dr. Csaky, we are three claims down and one to
11 go.

12 Let's turn to the final asserted claim. And that's
13 Claim 19 of the '601 patent. What does Claim 19 of the '601
14 patent require?

15 A. So, again, we have this dependency on Claim 18. And
16 in and of itself Claim 19 requires that these injections be
17 given approximately every four weeks, comprising approximately
18 every 28 days or approximately monthly.

19 Q. And just like the last three times, have you compiled
20 all the limitations of Claim 19, including the incorporated
21 limitations of Claim 18, into a single slide?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. Let's take a look at that. That's PDX 455. Let's go
24 straight to your questions now, PDX 4056.

25 Dr. Csaky, this is probably going to sound familiar,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 but our first question is does Mylan or Biocon's label
2 encourage, recommend, or promote that doctors perform methods
3 that infringe Claim 19 of the '601 patent?

4 A. Yes. In my opinions, it does.

5 Q. Let's take a look at that. It's PDX 4057.

6 Dr. Csaky, what is the first limitation of Claim 19?

7 A. The first limitation is treating diabetic
8 retinopathy.

9 Q. Is that an indication we've discussed already today?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. So in your opinion, Dr. Csaky, does the proposed
12 labeling for Yesafili, PTX 3097, recommend that doctors use
13 Yesafili in a method for treating diabetic retinopathy in a
14 patient in need thereof?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Let's take a look. PTX 3097, where is that
17 recommendation?

18 A. It says specifically that Yesafili is indicated for
19 the treatment of patients with diabetic retinopathy.

20 Q. And that's on page 1 under the indications and usage
21 section?

22 A. That's on indications and usage section.

23 Q. So can we check off the box, then, that the proposed
24 labeling for Yesafili recommends this first step of Claim 19?

25 A. Yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. What's the next step of Claim 19?

2 A. The next step is a two-part step, again where it says
3 intravitreally administering aflibercept to patients every four
4 weeks for the first five injections and that this four weeks
5 comprise approximately every 28 days or approximately monthly.

6 Q. Let's pull back up PTX 3097.

7 Dr. Csaky, does the proposed labeling for Yesafili
8 recommend doctors intravitreally administer to a patient an
9 effective amount of aflibercept, which is 2 milligrams,
10 approximately every four weeks for the first five injections to
11 treat DR?

12 A. Yes. It explicitly states that Yesafili is to be
13 administered intravitreally every four weeks, approximately
14 between 28 days, monthly for the first five injections.

15 Q. That's on page 1 of PTX 3097 under "Dosage and
16 Administration"?

17 A. That's under the "Dosage and Administration."

18 Q. And I just want to make sure we hit every point of
19 that.

20 Does the recommendation recommend 2 milligrams?

21 A. 2 milligrams.

22 Q. And for the first five injections, are those
23 recommended to be given every four weeks?

24 A. Yes, every four weeks, approximately every 28 days,
25 monthly.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Let's turn then -- pardon me. May we check off those
2 boxes, then? Have you concluded that Mylan or Biocon's label
3 recommends both of these steps of the steps shown on PDX 4058?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. What's the last limitation you'll address today,
6 Dr. Csaky, of Claim 19?

7 A. The last limitation is that the 2-milligram dose be
8 given approximately once every eight weeks, or two months,
9 following the first five injections.

10 Q. Well, let's pull back up PTX 3097.

11 Does the proposed labeling for Yesafili recommend
12 that doctors treat patients with diabetic retinopathy using
13 2-milligram doses approximately once every eight weeks or two
14 months after the first five injections?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Where does it make that recommendation?

17 A. Under "Dosage and Administration," it says followed
18 by 2 milligrams via intravitreal injection once every eight
19 weeks, two months.

20 Q. That's on PTX 3097, page 1, right?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. So, Dr. Csaky, can we check off that last limitation
23 shown on PDX 4059?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Dr. Csaky, what else does Claim 19 require?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Nothing. It does not require anything else.

2 Q. So let's head to PDX 461.

3 Turning back to your questions, can we answer
4 Number 1? In your opinion, does Mylan or Biocon's label
5 encourage, recommend, or promote doctors to infringe Claim 19
6 of the '601 patent?

7 A. Yes. In my opinion, Mylan/Biocon label does
8 encourage, recommend, or promote these methods that will
9 infringe.

10 Q. Now, let's turn to Question Number 2.

11 Dr. Csaky, this is about diabetic retinopathy, right?
12 This claim?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And you testified earlier that you have personally
15 and others have performed the method of Claim 19 in the context
16 of treating diabetic retinopathy?

17 A. Yes. In the context, I've treated patients with
18 diabetic macular edema and diabetic retinopathy.

19 Q. You've treated them in a method of Claim 19 where you
20 administer intravitreal 2-milligram doses approximately every
21 four weeks for the first five injections followed by
22 2 milligrams approximately once every eight weeks or two months
23 wherein approximately every four weeks comprises every 28 days
24 or approximately monthly?

25 A. Yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Okay. And in conversations with other doctors, as
2 you've testified earlier, do they also perform that method?

3 A. Yes. As I said, there's been more and more interest
4 in using anti-VEGF in particular for diabetic retinopathy,
5 especially if it's more severe, in certain cases where the
6 alternative is laser photocoagulation. So there's more and
7 more interest in using this approach, and so I've had
8 physicians -- we've talked about the utility of this approach
9 in treating these types of patients, and they claim that they
10 are using this approach.

11 Q. And I know we spent a lot of time talking about those
12 first five injections being administered monthly. I just want
13 to make sure, when you're thinking back on that testimony when
14 you spoke about those first five injections being administered
15 monthly -- excuse me -- every four weeks, were those doses
16 administered approximately every four weeks where that
17 comprises approximately every 28 days or approximately monthly?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Let's pull up the comparison of the labels one more
20 time here. That's PTX 917 on the left, PTX 3097 on the right.

21 Dr. Csaky, does Eylea's label also recommend that,
22 when doctors administer intravitreal injections every four
23 weeks for the first five injections, they do so approximately
24 every 28 days or approximately monthly?

25 A. Yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. So when doctors administer Eylea according to the
2 label for the treatment of diabetic retinopathy, do doctors
3 perform the method of Claim 19?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. And does that inform your opinion as to whether, if
6 doctors -- if Yesafili is marketed with the label that we see
7 at PTX 3097, some doctors will use Yesafili in exactly the same
8 way?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. So let's turn back to Question Number 2. That's on
11 PDX 464 -- excuse me -- PDX 462.

12 Dr. Csaky, can we answer Question Number 2 at this
13 point?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. In your opinion, if Mylan or Biocon markets Yesafili
16 with the label containing the recommendations in PTX 3097, will
17 some doctors actually follow those recommendations and perform
18 the method of Claim 19?

19 A. Yes, some doctors will follow that label and infringe
20 on the methods.

21 Q. So then let's switch to PDX 463, and let's take a
22 step back one last time.

23 In view of your opinion that Mylan or Biocon's label
24 recommends that doctors perform the method of Claim 19 and in
25 view of your opinion that some doctors will, in fact, perform

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 the method of Claim 19 if Yesafili is marketed, have you formed
2 an opinion as to whether or not Mylan or Biocon will induce
3 infringement of Claim 19 if they sell Yesafili?

4 A. Yes. My opinion is that Mylan or Biocon will induce
5 infringement on Claim 19 if they market Yesafili.

6 Q. Okay. Dr. Csaky, we've made it through the claims,
7 and we're nearly done. I want to touch on just two things
8 briefly.

9 Thus far, your testimony about how Mylan or Biocon
10 intends doctors to use Yesafili has been based on the proposed
11 Yesafili labeling, right?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And was that proposed labeling enough for you to draw
14 your conclusions about infringement?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Nevertheless, in the course of your work on this
17 case, did you come across additional evidence of how Mylan or
18 Biocon intends for doctors to use Yesafili?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Let's bring up PTX 331.

21 Dr. Csaky, what is this document?

22 A. So this is the first slide of a presentation that
23 Dr. Susan Bressler at the American Academy of Ophthalmology
24 where she is summarizing the INSIGHT study with Mylan 1701P,
25 which we can now call Yesafili. And as you can see the title,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 this is a proposed biosimilar to aflibercept, and she is
2 outlining the outcomes from the Phase III study.

3 Q. Is this the document that also -- excuse me. Strike
4 that.

5 I think you may have said this, but where did
6 Dr. Bressler present this presentation?

7 A. At the very bottom it says AAO. The AAO is the
8 American Academy of Ophthalmology.

9 Q. Who attends AAO?

10 A. It's the largest ophthalmology meeting in this
11 country at least, and all general ophthalmologists, retina
12 specialists will attend the American Academy of Ophthalmology
13 meeting.

14 Q. So if a company wants to inform ophthalmologists
15 about how to use a prospective drug, is this a place to do it?

16 A. This is the one place where you can disseminate
17 information and share the results of data with the community.

18 Q. This is a Phase III study, right?

19 A. Correct.

20 Q. Did Mylan do any additional Phase III studies?

21 A. Not that I'm aware of.

22 Q. What indication is this about?

23 A. This indication is for diabetic macular edema.

24 Q. Let's take a look at page 5 of the slide deck.

25 What regimen did Mylan test and did Dr. Bressler

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 present in this study?

2 A. I think what you have to look under, you see at the
3 very bottom -- I'm not trying to do this -- so here is the
4 regimen that they're recommending -- not recommended -- they
5 did for the trial. And you can see that, essentially, there
6 was an injection -- all these needles being injections --
7 there's an injection at baseline, and then the injections are
8 done every four weeks. So five injections monthly to begin
9 with, and then there's a transition, you can see, from there to
10 the 20 four-month injection going forward.

11 So the -- it's essentially a five loading doses and
12 then transitioning to every eight weeks.

13 Q. So does this regimen reflect the regimen of at least
14 Claims 6 and 25 of the '572 patent and Claim 11 of the '601
15 patent?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. I see a note there at the end it says "with Q4w
18 optional doses."

19 Do you see that yellow text?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. What does that mean?

22 A. So this is not uncommon in a clinical trial. When
23 you are assessing a drug and you want to make sure that there's
24 safety, these patients are seen every month, and there's
25 typically what's termed "rescue criteria," which means if they

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 are not doing well, they'll receive either an additional
2 injection or some other modality.

3 So that's not a required injection. It's simply to
4 indicate that these were times when patients were evaluated
5 and, if they did not meet -- say the vision did not get better,
6 they didn't get more swelling, they were not treated.

7 Q. So just to be clear, were those q4 optional doses
8 given to every patient in the study?

9 A. No. So this was only those patients who met these
10 criteria and needed, for example, another injection based on
11 prespecified reasons.

12 Q. Did many patients in this study, in fact, receive the
13 methods of Claim 6, 25, and 11 where they got five monthly
14 loading doses followed by q8 dosing?

15 A. Yes. My understanding is that the vast majority of
16 patients who went through that regimen.

17 Q. Let's turn to the last slide in Dr. Bressler's
18 presentation. That's PTX 331, page 12.

19 Looking at the top of the slide, Dr. Csaky, what, if
20 anything, is Dr. Bressler, on behalf of Mylan, telling doctors
21 about how to use Yesafili?

22 A. Well, what Dr. Bressler is communicating -- there's
23 the conclusions, and what she's demonstrating here is that the
24 INSIGHT study demonstrated therapeutic equivalence. Again this
25 is now -- we're going to call this Yesafili and aflibercept in

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 the treatment of diabetic macular edema. And then she goes on
2 to say why, and she goes on to talk also about the bottom
3 safety of the drug as well, and that was very similar to Eylea.

4 Q. And so just to make the record clear, MYL-1701P, I
5 think you said that was Yesafili, right?

6 A. My understanding is that's Yesafili.

7 Q. And the reference to aflibercept there, is that a
8 reference to Eylea?

9 A. That's my understanding.

10 Q. So if we look at the very bottom green box there,
11 "Following regulatory approval, MYL-1701P is expected to be a
12 new treatment option for patients with DME."

13 What, if anything, is Mylan telling doctors about
14 what to do with Yesafili if and when it gets approved?

15 A. Well, I think here what's being communicated is that
16 following approval, essentially, as we review her conclusions,
17 the fact that there was therapeutic equivalence and safety
18 equivalence, I think the ophthalmologists, in seeing this
19 presentation, that their interpretation would be that I can use
20 Yesafili essentially in an identical way that I'm using Eylea
21 in the treatment of DME.

22 Q. And the regimen that Dr. Bressler recommended in this
23 study -- or described in this study, that's the method of
24 Claim 6, 25, and 11, right?

25 A. That's correct.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Let's turn back one last time to PTX 3097.

2 I want to talk briefly, Dr. Csaky, about a portion of
3 the Mylan or Biocon label we haven't looked at yet today. In
4 the upper left-hand corner, I see some highlighted language
5 right under the prospective approval date. It reads, "Yesafili
6 (aflibercept-jbvf) is interchangeable with Eylea
7 (aflibercept)."

8 Do you see that?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. What does that mean to an ophthalmologist?

11 A. Again, for an ophthalmologist who's reading this,
12 it's essentially telling us that the two drugs are the same.

13 Q. How is it telling doctors they can use Yesafili?

14 A. Well, it's essentially indicating that we would then,
15 like you said, look at the label, and the label would then
16 instruct us on how to use it. But even with this statement
17 alone, the thinking of the ophthalmologist would be that I can
18 essentially exchange and use Yesafili in the exact same fashion
19 that I'm using Eylea in the clinic.

20 Q. And then finally, if we turn to some language in the
21 bottom right of the highlights of the prescribing
22 information -- so we're still on page 1 -- do you see the
23 highlighted language stating that "There are no clinically
24 meaningful differences between the products and it" --
25 Yesafili -- "can be expected to produce the same clinical

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - DIRECT

1 result as the referenced product" -- Eylea --

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. -- "in any given patient"?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. What does that language alone tell you about how
6 Mylan or Biocon intends for doctors to use Eylea?

7 A. Yeah. Again, this is communicating to
8 ophthalmologists that the two drugs are the same.

9 Q. And how does it communicating to doctors that you can
10 use those two drugs?

11 A. Because it's indicating it is expected to produce the
12 same clinical result as the reference product. In this case
13 the reference product was Eylea. So it's explicitly telling
14 the ophthalmologist that, when you use it, you can expect the
15 exact same clinical result.

16 Q. So is that an instruction that you can use Yesafili
17 in the exact same way you can use Eylea?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Do you need to look at anything else in the label to
20 know whether Mylan is -- Mylan or Biocon is telling you to use
21 Yesafili in the exact same way as you use Eylea?

22 A. For the ophthalmologist who sees only this, I think
23 the average ophthalmologist would read this and interpret it as
24 saying these two drugs are essentially the same.

25 Q. And you can use them the same way?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. And you can use them the same way.

2 Q. And just to close things off, does that new Biocon
3 label we reviewed, PTX 3338, have you had an opportunity to
4 confirm whether it contains the same language here?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. And does it?

7 A. It does.

8 MS. KAYALI: One moment, please.

9 With that, Your Honor, we pass the witness.

10 THE COURT: Counsel, cross.

11 MS. LESKO: **Your Honor, we have a couple of binders**
12 **for cross. May we pass them up?**

13 THE COURT: Permission granted. I'd be disappointed
14 if there weren't binders.

15 MS. LESKO: May I proceed, Your Honor?

16 THE COURT: You may. Go right ahead, Counsel.

17 CROSS-EXAMINATION

18 BY MS. LESKO:

19 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Csaky.

20 A. Good afternoon.

21 Q. I'm Ms. Lesko.

22 Dr. Csaky, you just offered a lot of opinions about
23 my clients. But let's be clear, you do not contend that Mylan
24 or Biocon directly infringed the asserted '572 or '601 patents,
25 right?

1 A. Correct.

2 Q. Dr. Csaky, do you recall participating in a
3 roundtable discussion at a Retina Society meeting in
4 Washington, DC, on October 5th, 2012?

5 A. I do not recall that.

6 Q. Let me try to help refresh your recollection.

7 If you can please open your binder, there should be a
8 document in the front pocket that is without a tab.

9 A. Uh-huh.

10 Q. It should be an article titled "Treating the
11 Patient," dated January 1st, 2013. We'll put that up on the
12 screen as well.

13 This article is described as highlighting a
14 roundtable discussion during the Retina Society meeting.

15 Do you see your name there on the first page?

16 A. I do see my name.

17 Q. It indicates you were one of the participants?

18 A. Correct.

19 Q. Does this help you confirm that you were a
20 participant in the roundtable discussion?

21 A. Yes, it does confirm that I was part of the
22 roundtable discussion.

23 Q. Let's go to page 2 of this document. I'd like to
24 direct your attention to the second full paragraph from the
25 bottom.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Do you see the statement attributed to you that says,
2 "Dr. Csaky: There is no set guideline that is applicable to a
3 majority of patients with wet AMD. When is persistent fluid
4 bad? I may tolerate a little subretinal fluid that remains
5 despite several reinjections more than intraretinal fluid which
6 has been shown in the CATT study to be associated with more
7 severe vision loss. It is those variations that necessitate
8 individualized decisions. I am finding there is no
9 one-size-fits-all treatment."

10 Did you make that statement before your peers?

11 A. I did make that statement before my peers.

12 Q. Is it true for you today that, when it comes to
13 treating your patients, there is no one-size-fits-all when
14 treating patients with VEGF inhibitors?

15 A. That's correct. I mean, every patient requires -- as
16 I mentioned earlier, that there is a whole range of decisions
17 that you have to make in deciding what's the best treatment for
18 that individual.

19 Q. Let's move to another statement attributed to you at
20 the Retina Society roundtable, which appears at the top of this
21 document, page 6. We'll put that up on the screen.

22 Do you have that?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Did you make the statement "That is what has
25 surprised me the most, the number of patients who need

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 injections every six weeks or even every five weeks instead of
2 every two months. We have seen very inconsistent results with
3 that two-month window in our practice."

4 A. Yes, I made that statement.

5 Q. Okay. Let's talk about another time when you
6 discussed the topic of settling on an anti-VEGF dosing regimen.

7 In around 2013 did you participate in a discussion
8 about settling on an anti-VEGF discussion dosing regimen?

9 A. I'm sure you're going to tell me I did.

10 Q. If you want to flip to the back of your binder, there
11 should be an article in the back pocket.

12 THE COURT: Feels like a safe assumption, Doctor. Go
13 ahead. Feels like a safe assumption. Go ahead.

14 THE WITNESS: I'm starting to remember all these
15 things. Yes. Go ahead.

16 BY MS. LESKO:

17 Q. So does that help refresh your recollection?

18 A. It does help refresh my recollection.

19 Q. And this is a review of *Ophthalmology* article titled
20 "Settling on an Anti-VEGF Dosing Regimen" dated August 5th,
21 2013?

22 A. That's correct.

23 Q. It's directed to "Current options for anti-VEGF
24 treatment, including continuous treatment at a fixed interval,
25 prn treatment, and a treat-and-extend strategy."

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Do you see that?

2 A. That's correct.

3 Q. Let's go to the third page of this exhibit.

4 A. Third page.

5 Q. Towards the middle of the page, do you see some
6 quotes attributed to you?

7 A. Correct. The third paragraph is where I say some
8 comments.

9 Q. I'd like to direct your attention to the first
10 sentence, which states that "Karl Csaky, MD, PhD, of the Retina
11 Foundation of the Southwest in Dallas, says, 'The challenge is
12 that the three agents typically used all have very similar
13 pharmacokinetics and durability, plus or minus a week or so.'"

14 Is that right?

15 A. Correct.

16 Q. You were also quoted in the second sentence of that
17 paragraph as saying, "One confounding problem is that there
18 appears to be an individualized durability interval that each
19 patient demonstrates."

20 Correct?

21 A. Correct.

22 Q. In the third sentence, did you then explain, "It
23 becomes a question of what strategy you use to dial in that
24 sweet spot between injections and find out whether they are,
25 for example, a five-weeker or a six-weeker."

1 Is that what you said?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. Is it still true for you today that, when it comes to
4 your patients, that you have to dial in that sweet spot between
5 injections to find the correct dosing interval?

6 A. Yes. For a significant number of patients, it's
7 important to try to figure out what's best for them. That's
8 correct in the majority of patients.

9 Q. Let's move along in this third page of the article
10 "Settling on an Anti-VEGF Dosing Regimen." We'll pull that
11 up -- it up on the screen for you as well.

12 It's the one that starts with "he also notes that
13 choosing a treatment strategy."

14 Do you see it in your paper exhibit?

15 A. Yes. "One confounding problem." Is that what we're
16 talking about?

17 Q. There it is.

18 A. "He also notes." Perfect. "He also notes," yes.

19 Q. Were you quoted as saying that "So if it is the only
20 good seeing eye, then you might want to be a little bit more
21 aggressive with the interval. At the interval after which such
22 an eye demonstrates recurrent fluid, we might want to have the
23 patient come back even every four weeks just to be absolutely
24 sure that we don't put them at risk for a bleed. That is the
25 major catastrophic event that we want to avoid."

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 That's what you said, right?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. And even today, do you believe that choosing a
4 treatment strategy also depends somewhat on the status of the
5 eye?

6 A. Yes, absolutely. So as we talked about, what we want
7 in our armamentarium, right, is a host of approaches. There's
8 some that we go to for sure and, depending on if it's the first
9 eye or the second eye, what the vision in the first eye is
10 versus the second eye, these are all various kind of
11 considerations in making these treatment decisions.

12 Q. Let's turn back to the second page, if you will.

13 A. Sure.

14 Q. Towards the middle of the page it says, "Treat and
15 extend is a more customized approach to treatment."

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Do you agree with that?

18 A. It is a more customized approach to -- than other
19 approaches, yes.

20 Q. Okay. We can pull that down.

21 Dr. Csaky, we can agree that you understand the
22 Yesafili label instructs four alternative wet AMD regimens, one
23 RVO regimen, and two alternative DME and DR regimens, right?

24 A. So we have one neovascular -- let me make sure. One
25 neovascular AMD, one RVO, and one diabetic retinopathy and

1 diabetic macular edema protocol. That's what they recommend,
2 correct.

3 Q. No, my question was slightly different.

4 Do you understand that the Yesafili label instructs
5 four alternative wet AMD regimens?

6 A. My understanding is it doesn't recommend four
7 alternatives; it recommends one.

8 Q. Right. But my question was asking about whether the
9 label instructs for alternative regimens.

10 A. I think you said "recommend," and if it instructs,
11 that's different.

12 Q. If I did, I apologize. So I'll ask it again just so
13 it's clear.

14 We can agree that you understand the Yesafili label
15 instructs four alternative wet AMD regimens, one RVO regimen,
16 and two alternative DME and DR regimens, right?

17 A. Right. I guess I would use the term "describes,"
18 right? Instructs -- yeah, I mean, we can call it -- it tells
19 how to do it.

20 Q. Okay. Just to make it easier, why don't we take a
21 look at DTX 2028, exhibit page 24, in your binder?

22 A. 2028. Sure.

23 Q. Which is your March 30th, 2023, reply report.

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. I'd like to direct your attention to the top of this

1 page, and we're on page 24. It's also up on your screen, if
2 that's easier.

3 A. Is it DTX 24? Are you using the bottom, not the
4 actual page of the document?

5 Q. That's correct. DTX 24.

6 A. Okay. Yes, please.

7 Q. Looking at the top of this page, which is a part of
8 your reply report, paragraph 43 -- and we have it up on the
9 screen for you.

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. In your report did you give the opinion, "Far from
12 offering 11 alternative dosage regimens for one indication, as
13 Dr. Russell's language suggests, the labels instruct four
14 alternative wet AMD regimens, one RVO regimen, and two
15 alternative DME DR regimens"?

16 A. Right.

17 Q. Next let's pull up DTX 3311, the Eylea labeling.

18 A. DTX -- I'm sorry. Say that again.

19 Q. 3311.

20 A. 3311. Okay.

21 Q. Page 1. I'd like to take a look at a new indication
22 that was recently put into the Eylea labeling under the dosage
23 and administration section at the top in the right column that
24 is titled "Retinopathy of prematurity, ROP."

25 A. Correct.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. Do you have that?

2 I would like to direct your attention to the
3 recommended dose for retinopathy of prematurity which is
4 0.4 milligrams, 0.01 milliliters, or 10 microliters,
5 administered by intravitreal injection.

6 Do you see that?

7 A. I do see that.

8 Q. Can you confirm that, for retinopathy of prematurity,
9 the dosing regimen on the label calls for treatment that may be
10 given bilaterally on the same day, injections may be repeated
11 in each eye, that treatment interval between doses injected
12 into the same eye should be at least ten days?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. Next let's pull up PTX 3338. This is the proposed
15 Yesafili labeling, 3338.

16 A. Have to get to the back of the binder here. Just a
17 second.

18 Okay. All right. Very good.

19 Q. Do you have it?

20 A. I have it now.

21 Q. And, again, I would like to direct your attention to
22 the dosage and administration section on the first page.

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. We also have it up on your screen.

25 A. Uh-huh.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. We can agree that the phrase "isotonic solution" is
2 not in the dosage and administration section, right?

3 A. I didn't -- again, I did not opine on anything to do
4 with isotonic solution; so I didn't review the label for that
5 term.

6 Q. And on your direct examination, you did not opine
7 that the phrase "isotonic solution" appears anywhere in the
8 Yesafili label, correct?

9 A. I can't recall. But if I did, then I did not see it.

10 Q. Well, let's take a look at the text in the Yesafili
11 label under the heading "Macular Edema Following Retinal Vein
12 Occlusion, RVO."

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. For RVO it states that the recommended dose for
15 Yesafili is 2 milligrams, 0.05 milliliters, administered by
16 intravitreal injection once every four weeks, approximately
17 every 25 days, monthly. Agree?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Can we agree that an only monthly dosing regimen here
20 in the label is not any kind of eight-week dosing regimen?

21 A. Correct. For macular edema following retinal vein
22 occlusion, there's no recommendation for extending the dose.

23 Q. Right. And a monthly dosing regimen is different
24 from an eight-week dosing regimen, right?

25 A. Correct.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. Looking at the DME and DR heading that is titled
2 "Diabetic Macular Edema, DME, and Diabetic Retinopathy, DR," do
3 you have that?

4 A. I see that, yes.

5 Q. Let's look at the second bullet under DME/DR, last
6 full sentence. We have it up on the screen as well. It says,
7 "Some patients may need every-four-week, monthly, dosing after
8 the first 20 weeks, five months," correct?

9 A. That's what it states, yes.

10 Q. Let's look at the AMD section. Are you there?

11 A. Yes. I see it right above it, yeah.

12 Q. And this is under the heading titled "Neovascular
13 (wet) age-related macular degeneration, AMD." I would like to
14 first direct your attention to the second bullet, last
15 sentence. We can agree that it says, "Some patients may need
16 every-four-week, monthly, dosing after the first 12 weeks,
17 three months," yes?

18 A. Yes, we can agree.

19 Q. If we move to the third bullet under the AMD dosing
20 and administration instructions in the Yesafili labeling, can
21 you confirm it states, "Although not as effective, patients may
22 be treated with one dose every 12 weeks"?

23 Correct?

24 A. Correct. After one year of -- after one year --
25 every 12 weeks after one year of effective therapy.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. And when we were talking about that 12-week dosing
2 interval, we can agree that it is not the approximately
3 eight-week dosing interval that is called for by Claim 6 of the
4 '572 patent, right?

5 A. That's correct. That's not in the '572 patent.

6 Q. And we can agree that a four-week (monthly) dosing
7 regimen is not an eight-week dosing regimen, right?

8 A. I'm sorry. Repeat that again. The four-week dosing
9 schedule --

10 Q. The four-week (monthly) dosing regimen is not an
11 eight-week dosing regimen?

12 A. That's true, yes.

13 Q. And we can also agree that an every-12-week regimen
14 is not an eight-week regimen?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Dr. Csaky, can we agree that the various dosing
17 regimens discussed in the Yesafili labeling that relates to
18 dosing for CRVO, DME, DR, or AMD that is just monthly will not
19 satisfy any of the asserted claims of the '601 and '572
20 patents?

21 A. So the monthly loading doses are within the claims,
22 correct. And your question is if you go beyond the loading
23 doses, correct?

24 Q. Correct.

25 A. So yes, if they go beyond the loading doses as

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 outlined -- now, it does say -- I'm not sure because it does
2 say -- can you just refresh my memory on the -- you said the
3 '572 patent?

4 Q. Yes. The asserted patent in this case.

5 A. Right. So can I just look at that real quickly?

6 Q. Can you answer this question first, and then we'll go
7 back to that later.

8 A. Well, because I think you're asking does monthly
9 dosing not apply to the '572. Is that what you asked?

10 Q. I'm just asking about the asserted claims of the '601
11 and '572 patents.

12 A. And I'm just trying to remember off the top of my
13 head. And we can get to that. But I just want to make sure I
14 understand because -- I may be wrong. I thought in the
15 loading -- I thought in the -- it says one or more -- I just
16 have to look at the '572 to be absolutely sure.

17 Q. Sure. Can we pull up the '572 patent, please.

18 A. I may be misremembering. I'm sorry. There's so many
19 claims and such.

20 THE COURT: Agreed, Doctor.

21 THE WITNESS: Yeah, if you're confused, I'm confused.
22 Okay.

23 BY MS. LESKO:

24 Q. And let's look at Claims 1 through 6 if we can pull
25 that up. It should be in your binder as well, Dr. Csaky. It's

1 PTX 3, if you want to --

2 A. PTX? I'm sorry.

3 Q. 3.

4 A. 3. I'm sorry. I just want to make sure, if you
5 don't mind. I apologize. I just want to make sure I don't
6 misspeak.

7 So my understanding would be that in the '572, right,
8 it has a method of treating an angiogenic eye disorder,
9 correct, in a patient in need thereof, comprising sequentially
10 administering to the patient by intravitreal injection a single
11 initial dose followed by one or more secondary doses, which
12 would imply that you can give more down the road, and then at
13 some point down the road you follow that by one or more
14 tertiary doses.

15 So there could be -- I guess you could interpret this
16 that, for a period of time, you would be giving monthly doses,
17 correct?

18 Q. So I just want to make sure we're understanding each
19 other. For Claim 1, would a straight monthly regimen be within
20 the scope of Claim 1?

21 A. Well, again, it would depend on -- you know, if I'm
22 giving one or more loading doses and I am looking at that
23 monthly regimen, it's kind of I'm having to just keep giving
24 monthly injections. You know, as kind of an ophthalmologist
25 reading this, I could interpret this as saying, well, I'm just

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 having to give monthly secondary doses, right? So for a while,
2 depending on how long that went, I might have to give a series
3 of secondary doses for a while and this claim would be still
4 valid. Would that be a fair assessment?

5 Q. Well, the question is for you.

6 A. I'll ask myself. If I would ask myself, I guess that
7 would be yes.

8 Q. You know what? Let's move on.

9 THE COURT: That's the beauty of being qualified as
10 an expert, Doctor.

11 THE WITNESS: I'm sorry.

12 THE COURT: Ask yourself a question.

13 Go ahead, Counsel.

14 BY MS. LESKO:

15 Q. Let's talk about clinical judgment. Now, Dr. Csaky,
16 a physician must exercise their clinical judgment to decide
17 whether their patient needs dosing for the first three months
18 followed by intravitreal injections once every eight weeks
19 versus once every four weeks versus once every 12 weeks, yes?

20 A. Yes, absolutely.

21 Q. And, again, a physician must be the one who decides
22 if their patient has had enough monthly doses or needs more
23 monthly doses beyond five for DME or DR, right?

24 A. We make -- you know, yes, we make assessments. As we
25 are treating patients, you know, we'll make assessments from

1 time to time to alter regimens depending on their response.

2 Q. And that comes down to the clinical judgment of the
3 physician?

4 A. Yes. I mean, the -- as we see a patient, then yes, I
5 can determine -- I'll give you an example. That if I'm
6 treating a patient and I know that that patient, like I
7 mentioned in my direct, that they have bad macular edema and I
8 want to go ahead and say I'm going to go ahead and give five, I
9 give five. And then I use my clinical judgment at that point
10 to determine the next step.

11 Q. Could we also agree that the decision to use
12 aflibercept in a fixed dosing regimen versus a prn regimen
13 versus a treat-and-extend regimen is an issue left to the
14 clinical judgment of physicians?

15 A. Yes. It's up to the clinician to determine what
16 regimen is best for that patient. And that's -- like I told
17 you, there's a whole series of decisions that we make deciding
18 what our regimen is going to be for that patient.

19 Q. Okay. And you were aware that there are clinicians
20 who exercise their clinical judgment to use Eylea in a
21 treat-and-extend method, yes?

22 A. Oh, yes.

23 Q. And we can agree that there are some clinicians who
24 exercise their clinical judgment to use Eylea in a prn dosing
25 regimen?

1 A. Yeah, some. Most of my colleagues probably don't do
2 that for macular degeneration. We tend to do it a little bit
3 more for diabetic macular edema. But some people do.

4 Q. Right. My question was we can agree that there are
5 some clinicians?

6 A. Clearly, yeah, there are some.

7 Q. And Claim 1 of the '572 patent does not cover
8 treat-and-extend dosing regimens, correct?

9 A. So the -- I think in my deposition you asked me this
10 question. And the term itself -- so we just want to make sure
11 how we define treat and extend, right? So there are various
12 terms for how we define treat and extend, correct. So at least
13 among my colleagues, you can get variations on what the term
14 "treat and extend" means, right? How -- and the term itself,
15 from my perspective, is really that step when you are treating
16 and extending, right? So that's a specific step of treatments,
17 protocols, that I make as I go forward, right?

18 So that portion of treat and extend is very specific.
19 And, again, each doctor, I can tell you, has -- we all have our
20 own individual algorithms and paradigms and what eye and which
21 patient, what our algorithm is for treat and extend.

22 So I'm not sure -- I'll give you an example. If I
23 take a patient and I start with, let's say, three monthly
24 dosing, right, and I switch to eight weeks, and I go for eight
25 weeks, let's say, two or three injections, and then I start

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 extending, right. So that portion of the extension is
2 definitely treat and extend, but the treat and extends can be
3 very much about -- there can be variations.

4 So I think we have to understand that the term "treat
5 and extend" is -- there's some variations in how we approach
6 it. Every patient is different. That's really the bottom
7 line.

8 Q. Well, Dr. Csaky, you were correct. You were asked
9 this question at your deposition. So let's turn to your
10 deposition transcript, which is at DTX 7224 --

11 A. Uh-huh.

12 Q. -- in your binder, Exhibit page 59.

13 A. Say that again.

14 Q. We'll put it up on the screen as well for you, but
15 it's DTX 7224. Transcript page 232, lines 2 to 6. Do you see
16 it up on the screen?

17 A. Sure do.

18 Q. Were you asked Claim 1 of the '572 patent also does
19 not cover treat-and-extend dosing regimens, correct?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And the answer you gave was it does not appear to
22 extend to incorporate the various aspects of treat-and-extend
23 protocols?

24 A. That's correct.

25 Q. So I just asked you -- I just asked you about the

1 '572 patent. So now let's go to the '601 patent. Does the
2 '601 patent cover treat-and-extend dosing regimens?

3 A. So, again, that portion of the treat and extend, it
4 does not.

5 Q. And let me ask this just to be clear for the record.

6 Does Claim 1 of the '601 patent cover
7 treat-and-extend dosing regimens?

8 A. So that portion that we talk about when we say treat
9 and extend does not, right? It depends on the context in which
10 you define -- so if we're talking about a true treat and extend
11 when -- let's say right from the beginning I'm treating and
12 extending, then it does not.

13 But if there's other regimens when I'm, let's say,
14 doing a certain portion and then I start to treat and extend
15 down the road at some point, then you might say that, well, at
16 the beginning, I did something of the -- you know, in this
17 case, '572. So the term "treat and extend" didn't apply. So
18 as I said, it doesn't apply directly in that context because
19 it's not that concept of treat and extend, right?

20 So it's important to understand what treat and extend
21 is. It's truly what it means, right? It's -- you're treating
22 and extending, treating and extending the interval, right?

23 Q. So, Dr. Csaky, I'm sure you're not surprised you were
24 asked this question as well at your deposition.

25 A. Yeah.

1 Q. And the answer you gave then was a little bit with
2 less commentary. So let's just look back at your deposition
3 transcript and see what exactly you answered.

4 Were you asked the question, "Does Claim 1 of the
5 '601 patent cover treat-and-extend dosing regimens?"

6 And the answer you gave was, "Of the -- Claim 1 of
7 the '601 patent does not appear to extend to treat and extend."

8 Were you asked that question and you gave that
9 answer?

10 A. Absolutely.

11 Q. So we just went through treat and extend. Let's now
12 talk about prn dosing.

13 Is it your opinion that prn dosing regimens are not
14 covered by the asserted claims here?

15 A. So that phase of the prn dosing regimen is not
16 covered. By the '601 or the -- whatever the -- repeat -- the
17 claims. That portion of what we would term prn is not covered.

18 Q. And you would agree that prn is significantly
19 different than a dosing schedule that happens at fixed
20 intervals?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. Let's switch gears for a moment. Do you know
23 Dr. Carl Regillo.

24 A. I know Carl.

25 Q. He's well-known and highly regarded in the

1 ophthalmology field?

2 A. Carl's a good friend and highly regarded.

3 Q. According to your CV, you have even published
4 articles together?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. So let's go to the "Settling on an Anti-VEGF Dosing
7 Regimen" article that we previously looked at. It was one of
8 the standalone documents.

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Do you have that? We'll put it up on the screen as
11 well.

12 A. Can you give me the -- do I need the PTX thing?

13 Q. This is one of the ones that was in the pocket.

14 A. Oh, okay.

15 Q. It's titled "Settling on an Anti-VEGF Dosing
16 Regimen."

17 A. Okay. So there were two pocket articles. Right?
18 They were these two, correct?

19 Q. Yes. And it's up on the screen.

20 A. Perfect. Okay. Thank you so much.

21 Q. Okay. So directing your attention to page 1 and
22 specifically on the first page of that article, third
23 paragraph, do you see Dr. Regillo's statement here that "You
24 can do a continuous treatment at a fixed interval where you
25 treat every month or every two months. That's the least

1 popular approach."

2 Do you see that?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Do you agree with Dr. Regillo that, even as early as
5 2013, fixed-interval dosing was the least popular anti-VEGF
6 dosing regimen?

7 A. Yeah. I mean, it's hard to know back then, but I
8 think it's fair to say that the term "popular" assumes that
9 people didn't -- I think that it was -- there was only some
10 indications in which people would use it. It clearly was in
11 the minority. I would agree with that statement.

12 Q. Okay. We can take that down, please.

13 And do you see that the next sentence says, "Very few
14 people do that because it may represent overtreatment in some
15 people"? Do you see that?

16 A. Correct.

17 Q. The next is "Prn treatment, which is an approach to
18 individualized therapy and minimize overtreatment."

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Would you agree with that statement?

21 A. It definitely -- I just want to make sure we're clear
22 because you heard you say about prn.

23 It's important -- and Carl said it correctly here.
24 It definitely minimizes overtreatment, but it can minimize --
25 you can maximize undertreatment.

1 Q. And then the final line is "You treat monthly until
2 the macula is dry, and then you monitor closely and treat
3 recurrences."

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. And you agree with that?

6 A. That's Carl's approach to his description of what
7 he's doing.

8 Q. And that's a prn approach?

9 A. Well, if you looked -- I mean, again, I think it's
10 important to recognize that we all have our own -- you know,
11 there's no set -- you know, these definitions -- prn, treat and
12 extend -- are very much individually -- we all use our own kind
13 of vocabulary, if you want to call it, right?

14 So our vocabularies that we use can be somewhat
15 individual, right? You call it tomahto; I call it tomato.
16 What you call prn, I call it something else. But this is
17 Carl's -- his definition of prn.

18 Q. And let's look at Carl's -- Dr. Regillo's third
19 statement here. "The third approach is the treat-and-extend
20 strategy, which some believe may represent the best of both
21 worlds in disease control and treatment burden."

22 Do you see that Dr. Regillo stated that?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. And do you agree with Dr. Regillo's statement there?

25 A. You know, so again, I think -- I mean, we all use it.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 We all do treat and extend. You know, the interesting thing
2 about treat and extend is, you know, in many cases we end up
3 with more injections, depending on the level of willingness to
4 accept some degree of fluid, right?

5 So again, you know, some believe it's the best. Some
6 believe it's the best; some don't believe it's the best.

7 Q. Let's put up on the screen DTX 2042.

8 And, Dr. Csaky, during your direct examination you
9 testified that you are part of the American Society of Retina
10 Specialists, correct?

11 A. Yes, I am.

12 Q. Can you confirm that DTX 2042 is the association of
13 retinal specialists, 2017 PAT Survey?

14 A. I can.

15 Q. You've seen this before?

16 A. I have seen that.

17 Q. You have reviewed the PAT Surveys before?

18 A. I have reviewed the PAT Surveys.

19 Q. Do you typically review PAT Surveys?

20 A. I do -- again, I would say, you know, it just depends
21 on kind of what mood I'm in, but yes.

22 MS. LESKO: And, Your Honor, we move to admit
23 DTX 2042 into evidence.

24 THE COURT: Any objection?

25 MS. KAYALI: No objection, Your Honor.

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - CROSS

1 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted, DTX 2042.
2 (DTX 2042 was admitted.)

3 BY MS. LESKO:

4 Q. So let's look at DTX 2042 at exhibit page 17, which
5 is Slide 7 of the 2017 PAT Survey.

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. It has the heading "In general, how do you treat wet
8 AMD patients with active CNV"?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. I'd like to direct your attention to Option 8, which
11 reads, "Treat until dry on OCT, then as needed, prn."

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Can we agree that Option A is a prn dosing regimen
14 that was the preference of 9.8 percent of the physicians
15 surveyed?

16 A. Yes. Again, I just want to make sure we're clear
17 because I think it's these terminologies. When you say a prn,
18 this is -- when doctors fill this out, there's choices --

19 Q. Sir, I'm just asking you to say what's on the screen,
20 actually.

21 A. Oh, you want me to just repeat what's on the screen?

22 Q. I'm sorry. Go ahead. I didn't mean to cut you off.
23 Do you want to finish your answer?

24 A. No. All I was saying was, when you asked does this
25 represent prn, it represents to these individuals the choice of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 whatever they chose as prn, correct.

2 Q. Okay. And that's 9.8 percent?

3 A. That's 9.8 percent.

4 Q. And Option B is described as a regimen of treat until
5 dry on OCT, then extend -- treat and extend, correct?

6 A. Correct.

7 Q. That was the overwhelming preference of over
8 70.9 percent of physicians surveyed?

9 A. That is, again, this definition of "treat and extend
10 until dry" and then how the physicians determined in their --
11 whatever regimen they're using for treat and extend, they would
12 have chosen, you know, this category of -- on the survey.

13 Q. Let's look at Option C, which reads, "Treat until dry
14 on OCT; then follow up every three or four months."

15 Do you see that?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Does the Option C regimen fall within the scope of
18 the asserted claims here?

19 A. As written, this would not fall under the regimen as
20 far as I can tell. So --

21 Q. Let's pull up Option D, which reads, "Inject monthly
22 regardless of fluid or exam," yes?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Does the Option D regimen fall within the scope of
25 the asserted claims here?

1 A. So again, as we talked about, could someone in the
2 '572 be injecting monthly as a way to say I can inject on a --
3 with my secondary doses for a while, but I would say in general
4 this would not fall under the '572 patent.

5 Q. We then have Option E, which encompasses Options A or
6 B, and that was the stated practice of 60.3 percent of
7 physicians responding to the survey, right?

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. That leaves Option F, other, at 1.2 percent in the
10 PAT Survey, right?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. We can pull that exhibit down.

13 In your opinions in this case, did you offer any data
14 comparable to what we saw in the PAT Survey for physicians
15 specific to treatment practices for diabetic retinopathy or
16 diabetic macular edema?

17 A. I did not.

18 Q. In fact, you have not endeavored and did not attempt
19 in your direct examination to quantify the number of
20 ophthalmologists who currently employ the claimed methods with
21 Eylea or the number who actually would follow the instructions
22 to employ those methods with Yesafili, true?

23 A. I did not.

24 Q. Dr. Csaky, let's go back to PTX 586, which your
25 counsel showed you in your direct exam. Let's start with

1 exhibit page 1. We'll put it up on the screen as well.

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. If we look at the background and objective section,
4 this analysis of the IRIS Registry tried to see if they could
5 emulate the VIEW randomized clinical trials, eligibility
6 criteria, treatment protocol regimen, and primary end point,
7 right?

8 A. That's what it states, correct.

9 Q. Let's take a look at the results section on the first
10 page of PTX 586, bottom left-hand corner. It says that there
11 were 90,900 patients who met the VIEW randomized clinical trial
12 eligibility criteria, right?

13 A. Correct. I'm sorry. Say that again. I lost my
14 train of thought. Say that last statement before. What did
15 you say?

16 Q. In the results section, bottom left-hand corner,
17 first sentence, it says that there were 90,900 patients who met
18 VIEW RCT eligibility criteria?

19 A. That's correct.

20 Q. And that's the randomized clinical trial eligibility
21 criteria?

22 A. That's correct.

23 Q. Let's go to the top paragraph in the upper right-hand
24 column of exhibit page 1 of PTX 586, the conclusion section.

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. We can agree that in the conclusion section, they
2 reported that a small percentage of real-world patients met the
3 view randomized clinical trial study eligibility criteria and
4 treatment protocol regimen, right?

5 A. Correct.

6 Q. Now let's go to the fourth page of this exhibit,
7 Table 3, what is titled "Inclusion Criteria for Treatment
8 Arms."

9 Do you have that on your screen?

10 A. Yes, I've got it. Thank you.

11 Q. If we look at the right-hand column, that is the one
12 that is titled "IAI 2q8," right?

13 A. Yes. "IAI 2q8." Gotcha.

14 Q. That is the one you identified as the one covered by
15 the claims here?

16 A. Correct.

17 Q. Let's look at the inclusion criteria of patient
18 needed to meet that entry description of IAI 2q8.

19 Do you see that on the screen?

20 A. Yes. That's true. Yes, I see that.

21 Q. The first entry says, "Three consecutive monthly
22 injections every 28 days plus or minus seven days," right?

23 A. Gotcha. Sorry. I was one page behind.

24 Yes. Go ahead. Yes, three monthly injections. Yes.

25 Q. So the first three loading doses could be spaced

1 anywhere from 21 days, three weeks, to 35 days, five weeks
2 apart?

3 A. Correct. They can be plus or minus seven days.

4 Q. Now let's look at the last entry in this right-hand
5 column titled "IAI 2q8." It states, "After the third monthly
6 injection, injections needed to occur every 56 days, plus or
7 minus seven days," right?

8 A. Correct.

9 Q. Every eight weeks would be every 56 days, true?

10 A. Correct.

11 Q. So their criteria included patients who were dosed
12 every seven weeks as well as every nine weeks?

13 A. They could have been, plus or minus seven days,
14 right. So it could have been eight weeks or nine weeks or
15 seven weeks, correct.

16 Q. Let's sum this up, then. For a patient's medical
17 record in the study to be put into the IAI 2q8 bucket, the term
18 "monthly" was used to mean every three to five weeks and the
19 extended interval afterwards was allowed to be seven to nine
20 weeks. Is that correct?

21 A. Correct.

22 Q. Let's go to exhibit page 5 in PTX 586, right-hand
23 column, near the bottom of the page, last full paragraph,
24 please.

25 A. You're going a little faster than I can process. Say

1 that again.

2 Q. Exhibit page 5.

3 A. Exhibit page 5.

4 Q. Right-hand column.

5 A. Gotcha, gotcha, gotcha. Just a little faster than I
6 am. Okay.

7 Q. I apologize. Last full paragraph.

8 A. Yes. I gotcha. The word "total." Yes, I gotcha.

9 Q. The one that starts off "there was a total of
10 606,971"?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. It says in the first sentence that "For this
13 publication, there was a total of 606,971 patients who had an
14 anti-VEGF injection during our study period," right?

15 A. Correct.

16 Q. So that means in the patient records screened, the
17 patient got at least one injection of aflibercept, bevacizumab,
18 or ranibizumab or another VEGF inhibitor?

19 A. Those would be -- for this period of time, we don't
20 have -- those are the three anti-VEGF agents we have right now.

21 Q. Let's go to the Table 5 you pointed to, which is at
22 exhibit page 6 --

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. -- in PTX 586.

25 A. Yes.

1 Q. There were only 154 patients out of the over 90,000
2 screened that met the IAI 2q8 criteria, right?

3 A. So, again, you have to remember here that there was a
4 restriction, right? I think you pointed out that restriction
5 yourself, I think. And that is that there had to be -- maybe
6 you didn't, but I will. So if you look on Table 2 -- and
7 that's PTX 0003. Do you see that?

8 Q. Yep.

9 A. Okay. So the important thing here is to recognize
10 that what they were trying to do is not identify everybody who
11 was receiving this regimen, right? They were trying to
12 identify the regimen that -- in people who met the
13 VIEW 1-VIEW 2 inclusion criteria, right?

14 So there could have been people who didn't meet that
15 inclusion criteria, right? They would not have been counted.
16 They could be on this regimen.

17 So this is not a full survey. What they were trying
18 to really do is emulate VIEW 1 and VIEW 2. So they didn't
19 necessarily go -- say, hey, let's take everybody who received
20 that regimen regardless of what -- how they fit into the
21 VIEW 1-VIEW 2 eligibility criteria, right? So we have to
22 understand that the purpose of this study was to really not
23 just understand that we already excluded patients who didn't
24 meet those inclusion --

25 Q. Dr. Csaky?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - CROSS

1 A. I'm sorry. Am I talking too much?

2 Q. No, I'm sorry. Go ahead. My question was slightly
3 different, but I don't want to cut you off.

4 A. No, no. You were asking me -- because I think the
5 question is this represents some number, and I wanted to make
6 sure we're clear that there could have been other patients in
7 the IRIS Registry who received this treatment protocol but
8 would not have been included in this study.

9 Q. Okay. 20 times more patients in this chart were
10 given monthly aflibercept injections as compared to patients in
11 the IAI 2q8 group, right?

12 A. So 20 times more patients were given -- you're saying
13 every four months -- four weeks. I'm sorry. I'm a little bit
14 slow.

15 Q. 20 times more -- 15 times more patients in this chart
16 were -- I apologize.

17 A. I miss --

18 THE COURT: It's math. That's all you, Counsel.

19 THE WITNESS: Okay. Yes.

20 MS. LESKO: Someone else drafted this particular
21 question.

22 THE COURT: Noted.

23 THE WITNESS: Okay. Yes.

24 BY MS. LESKO:

25 Q. I believe it's 15 --

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. It's approximately 15.

2 Q. -- times more patients in this chart were given
3 monthly aflibercept injections as compared to patients in the
4 IAI 2q8 group; is that right?

5 A. On the patients -- again, you have to remember -- I
6 just want to make sure we're clear for the record -- that this
7 is in the groups of patients who met the eligibility criteria
8 and then were allowed to be examined for when they got their
9 treatment. So in this subset of patients, yes, your math is
10 correct.

11 Q. And there were over ten times as many patients being
12 treated with ranibizumab monthly as compared to patients in the
13 IAI 2q8 group, right?

14 A. Yes. Again -- I'm not going to keep repeating the
15 caveats, but yes.

16 Q. And, Dr. Csaky, let's take one more look at PTX 1527,
17 which is Dr. Do's declaration.

18 A. Okay.

19 Q. In the front page do you see the title "Inter Partes
20 Review Number 2021-0081"?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. It says U.S. Patent Number 9,254,338 B2?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Are you aware that the '338 patent is in the same
25 patent family as the '572 and the '601 patents here?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. I'm not aware of any of those patents -- those patent
2 issues.

3 Q. Are you aware that inter partes review proceedings
4 are contested proceedings between Regeneron and Mylan in the
5 PTO?

6 A. I'm not -- again, I hate to say this, but I'm -- when
7 I can play down "I'm not a lawyer" card; and so I don't know
8 all the details. I'm sorry.

9 Q. That's okay. Let's go to PTX 1527, the third page of
10 Dr. Do's declaration.

11 A. Is it in my --

12 Q. We can pull it up on the screen.

13 A. So I don't have to find it through this -- go ahead.

14 Q. Can you confirm that Dr. Do stated in her declaration
15 that she was retained by counsel for Regeneron when she made
16 these statements?

17 A. Yes. She said, "I've been retained by counsel for
18 Regeneron," correct.

19 Q. If we look at the bottom of exhibit page 3 in
20 paragraph 2, did Dr. Do confirm that she was acting as a paid
21 expert for Regeneron when she made the statements you relied on
22 here?

23 A. Yes. She is being paid at an hourly rate, correct.

24 Q. Can you identify for me any of your published papers
25 where you have relied on a paid litigation statement by an

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 expert witness as the basis for your scientific opinions?

2 A. No, I don't think I've ever relied on a -- I'm trying
3 to remember because we do sit on scientific advisory boards,
4 right? We all get paid to be on a scientific advisory board.
5 And so in some of those cases, people are paid.

6 And so when people give opinions -- not to digress,
7 but it is an important question because, as I think about it,
8 right, in today's world, there's an interplay between industry
9 and academics. And so, many times ideas are exchanged in the
10 context of a scientific advisory board by a company, right?

11 And so I'd have -- I think -- I'd probably say I have
12 used opinions in the context of somebody being paid from an
13 advisory perspective from a company and used that in my
14 thinking and how I write a paper or think about things for
15 sure.

16 Q. So just to be clear, I wasn't just asking about any
17 paid consulting relationship. I'm asking can you identify for
18 me any of your published papers where you have relied on a paid
19 litigation statement by an expert witness as the basis for your
20 scientific opinion?

21 A. No, that's true. I don't think I've ever used a
22 litigation document -- I mean statement for my scientific
23 advisory.

24 Q. These conversations with doctors that you talked
25 about in your direct examination, can you identify for me any

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 time when you talked about treatment guidelines and how to dose
2 patients based on what was said in a statement they were paid
3 to make in a litigation-type proceeding?

4 A. No. As I said, I don't think I've ever relied on a
5 paid litigation context. But am I allowed to just say one
6 other thing just because I know Dr. Do? Is that --

7 THE COURT: Is it in response to the question, sir?

8 THE WITNESS: Yeah. No, I just want to make sure
9 because Diana Do is a good friend. She's an incredibly ethical
10 person. And so I guess when I read this, for me it reflected
11 Diana's opinions, right? And so from my perspective, because I
12 know Diana -- I think you have seen my CV; Diana and I have
13 published together -- I used -- my reliance was really on
14 knowing Diana and knowing how ethical she is and what she's
15 going to say reflects what she truly believes.

16 BY MS. LESKO:

17 Q. Can you identify for me any of your published
18 scientific work before your peers where you have relied on
19 assertions made in a declaration from legal proceedings?

20 A. I have not.

21 MS. LESKO: Your Honor, in view of this testimony, we
22 renew our motion to exclude for noncompliance with Rule 703.
23 We are happy to address it in posttrial submissions if you
24 prefer.

25 THE COURT: The Court will hold that motion in

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - REDIRECT

1 abeyance until the parties have a chance to brief in posttrial
2 motions.

3 Any other questions on cross-examination, Counsel?

4 MS. LESKO: Nothing further at this time, Your Honor.
5 Thank you.

6 Thank you, Dr. Csaky.

7 THE COURT: Redirect, Counsel?

8 MS. KAYALI: I do, Your Honor. If I could ask the
9 Court's indulgence for a brief personal comfort break, I'd
10 really appreciate it.

11 THE COURT: Certainly. Motion granted. We'll take
12 ten minutes.

13 Doctor, you remain countryless, sir.

14 So we'll take ten primarily for counsel's benefit.
15 I'll ask everyone else to let her head to the front of the
16 line.

17 (A recess was taken from 2:36 p.m. to
18 2:52 p.m.)

19 THE COURT: Counsel, assuming an appropriate level of
20 personal comfort has been restored, you may proceed.

21 MS. KAYALI: It has been, with sincere gratitude,
22 Your Honor.

23 THE COURT: Outstanding. Go right ahead.

24 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

25

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 BY MS. KAYALI:

2 Q. Let's pull up PTX 3, if we could, and I want to look
3 at Claim 6, please.

4 And, Dr. Csaky, I want to see if I can clarify the
5 kinds of regimens that are in the scope of Claim 6. So I want
6 you to imagine for me a regimen in which you gave three monthly
7 loading doses followed by a switch to dosing once every eight
8 weeks for at least one or two doses, and then you chose to
9 extend the regimen from there in duration.

10 Have you performed the method of Claim 6?

11 A. If I did that, then I would have performed the method
12 of Claim 6. Claim 1, actually.

13 Q. Claim 1 and then by virtue of assuming Dr. Trout
14 testifies that Yesafili is isotonic, then you would have
15 performed the method of Claim 6; is that right?

16 A. Correct.

17 Q. Let's turn, then, to DTX 2042, and I want to look at
18 Slide Number 7. And so that's DTX 2042, page 17.

19 Do you see this?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. And do you recall being asked about this slide and
22 this document during cross-examination?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. So I want you to imagine the very same regimen. A
25 physician gives three monthly doses, followed by dosing once

1 every eight weeks for one or two doses, and then chose to
2 extend the treatment interval from there.

3 Which of the options would the physician have
4 selected in this survey?

5 A. So, again, this is what I was trying to explain was
6 that the -- when I opined previously the treat-and-extend is a
7 very specific regimen, right? It's -- and so it could very
8 well be, and many times what we really are using treat and
9 extend is for the extended maintenance period.

10 You have to remember that we don't cure a lot of
11 these patients. We cure very few patients. And so we're
12 trying to -- we struggle to get to that interval that's right
13 for them.

14 The beginning stages are somewhat different, right?
15 The beginning stages, as we've talked about, we want to control
16 the disease, we want to give those almost three loading doses.
17 Very common approach to give three loading doses. And then
18 what this has taught us is we can go to eight weeks, right?
19 And there's some people who would then go eight weeks for one
20 or two just to make sure the disease is nice and quiet, and
21 then they will start to extend.

22 So if I'm treating someone like that and I've been
23 out a year or two, then I'm going to have picked B because
24 they're on treat-and-extend regimen, right? But it could very
25 well have been that at the beginning of my treatment regimen I

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - REDIRECT

1 would have used a method that we just talked about where I'm
2 giving three monthly loadings; I'm extending to eight weeks; I
3 may give one or two eight-week injections, maybe even three;
4 and transition to a treat-and-extend.

5 So that's what I was trying to explain, is that these
6 treat-and-extend regimens are highly variable and there is no
7 such thing as this is what treat and extend is because it all
8 depends on the interval when you decide to choose, how
9 aggressively you want to go to that treat-and-extend interval.

10 And so the beginning stages can be in some cases more
11 like the claim; other cases you can go right into a
12 treat-and-extend. So, for example, if I take -- see a patient,
13 I inject, have them come back in four weeks, they're dry, I go
14 right to six weeks, right to eight weeks, I'm
15 treat-and-extending right from the beginning, then I'm not
16 following the claim.

17 So there is -- you know, there's some complexity and
18 tremendous amount of heterogeneity in this choice that
19 physicians would have chosen in this PAT Survey.

20 Q. And, Dr. Csaky, I just have really one more set of
21 questions. I believe you were asked on cross-examination about
22 various ways doctors use Eylea that don't necessarily conform
23 precisely to the label.

24 Does it remain your opinion that, if Yesafili is
25 marketed, at least some doctors will do exactly what that label

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - REDIRECT

1 says and perform the method of the claims?

2 A. Yeah. I mean, as we said, there would still be some
3 doctors who will do, as we talked about, the methods of the
4 claim.

5 MS. KAYALI: No further questions, Your Honor.

6 THE COURT: Recross, Counsel?

7 MS. LESKO: No, Your Honor. Thank you.

8 THE COURT: All right. Doctor, thank you very much,
9 sir. You can step down. Yes, you're allowed to speak to other
10 humans.

11 THE WITNESS: Thank you, Your Honor.

12 THE COURT: I don't know if that's good or bad.

13 THE WITNESS: They're all lawyers.

14 THE COURT: Trust me, I know.

15 That wasn't a personal comment on anyone here.

16 Counsel, I suspect I know what you're doing.

17 MS. KAYALI: Yes. Your Honor, I had wrote it on a
18 sticky note and it went nowhere.

19 I would like to move the admission of the exhibits
20 that we used in Dr. Csaky's direct examination.

21 I'm sorry, Ms. Lesko, to have you return.

22 THE COURT: All right, Counsel. Thank you. Do you
23 have a list of those?

24 MS. KAYALI: I do.

25 THE COURT: If I could ask you to do that slowly,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KARL CSAKY, MD, PhD - REDIRECT

1 please.

2 MS. KAYALI: Yes, Your Honor. Just for counsel's
3 comfort, I do not intend to move the admission of Dr. Do's
4 declaration; so I suspect we are otherwise in agreement.

5 The first was DTX 7053. The next is PTX 001, which I
6 believe is already in evidence. The next is, again, PTX 003.
7 I believe that's also already in evidence. The next is
8 PTX 331. After that, PTX 586. And I have PTX 917, PTX 963,
9 PTX 3097, and PTX 3338.

10 THE COURT: Any objection to any of those, Counsel?

11 MS. LESKO: No objection, Your Honor.

12 THE COURT: Without objection, those are hereby
13 deemed admitted.

14 (PTX 331, 586, 917, 963, 3097, 3338 were
15 admitted.)

16 MS. KAYALI: Thank you, Your Honor.

17 THE COURT: Thank you.

18 Musical chairs may resume. Thank you all.

19 Yes, Mr. Berl.

20 MR. BERL: Yes, Your Honor. Plaintiffs want to call
21 Dr. Eric Furfine. I think opposing counsel has stated a
22 request to note some objection before he takes the stand; so
23 I'll yield so he can do that.

24 THE COURT: Counsel.

25 MR. SALMEN: Thank you, Your Honor. Heinz Salmen on

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 behalf of the defendant. I'll be very quick, Your Honor, but
2 there was one issue that we wanted to bring to Your Honor's
3 attention before Dr. Furfine took the stand.

4 Regeneron identified several dozen documents that
5 Dr. Furfine is going to be testifying about today, and our
6 objection to these documents -- to those exhibits is that the
7 vast majority of them were not disclosed in response to our
8 interrogatories regarding a prior invention and conception and
9 reduction to practice.

10 Now, we anticipated this issue in our Motion in
11 Limine Number 5. That's at Docket Number 449. And we are
12 happy to defer argument on this to our posttrial briefing, but
13 we wanted to make it clear that, in our view, plaintiff had an
14 obligation to disclose these documents in response to our
15 interrogatories. They did not, and they had an obligation to
16 disclose them with particularity. They also did not do that.

17 THE COURT: Do you have these documents now, Counsel?
18 Were they disclosed in discovery at some point?

19 MR. SALMEN: They were. They were produced, Your
20 Honor. They were never disclosed in response to our
21 interrogatories.

22 So we're not taking a position that Dr. Furfine
23 cannot state his knowledge with respect to them, but in our
24 view they should not be -- Regeneron should not be permitted to
25 rely on these documents to establish that prior invention date.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 THE COURT: Understood. The Court will continue to
2 hold that issue in abeyance until posttrial briefing. For
3 purposes of our trial record, the Court will presumably receive
4 them as we go. They were produced in discovery, as counsel
5 indicated. I realize there's a looming issue with respect to
6 how specific those discovery responses may be. And we'll take
7 that up I'm sure in posttrial briefing in the Court's ultimate
8 order.

9 MR. BERL: In case it wasn't clear to Your Honor, we
10 disagree with virtually everything that Mr. Salmen just said.

11 THE COURT: I assumed as much, Mr. Berl. I know what
12 happens when you assume, but I feel safe doing that here.

13 With the -- I came to change of shift in a coal mine,
14 but with that, Mr. Berl, plaintiff may now call its next
15 witness.

16 MR. BERL: Thank you, Your Honor. Plaintiffs call
17 Dr. Eric Furfine.

18 **ERIC FURFINE, PhD, PLAINTIFF'S WITNESS, SWORN**

19 MR. BERL: Your Honor, may I approach with exhibits
20 and demonstratives?

21 THE COURT: You may.

22 Thank you, Counsel. You may proceed.

23 MR. BERL: Thank you, Your Honor.

24 DIRECT EXAMINATION

25

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 BY MR. BERL:

2 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Furfine. And try to speak into
3 the microphone and rather slowly. I'll try to do the same. I
4 have a fear that Ms. Knecht is going to oppose my next pro hac
5 vice application if we don't.

6 THE COURT: I'll take the fifth. Go ahead.

7 BY MR. BERL:

8 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Furfine.

9 A. Good afternoon.

10 Q. Would you please introduce yourself to the Court.

11 A. My name is Eric Furfine.

12 Q. What do you do for a living, Dr. Furfine?

13 A. I'm a drug discovery and development scientist.

14 Q. How did you become interested in science?

15 A. My interest in science started many years ago when I
16 was a child, and I guess I'm an example of the apple doesn't
17 fall very far from the tree. My dad was a biochemist. And I
18 remember when young, he would take my brother and I into the
19 lab with him and, you know, we would help his graduate students
20 and postdocs -- what we called washing the dishes, but was
21 mostly really cleaning their glassware. And I just remember
22 becoming fascinated with science and the work in the lab at a
23 very early age.

24 Q. And what did you want to do when you grew up when you
25 were a kid?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. I was always headed towards some scientific endeavor.
2 As I progressed through my schooling, college, and graduate
3 school, it became clearer and clearer to me that I really
4 wanted to work in making medicines, that that would be
5 something I could get excited about on a regular basis and draw
6 me into work.

7 Q. What do you do now?

8 A. I am the chief scientific and executive officer of a
9 company called Mosaic Biosciences. We do drug discovery for
10 other companies.

11 Q. Who are your clients for whom you help drug
12 discovery?

13 A. Most of our clients are very small biotech companies
14 that are looking to be able to build their company without
15 actually hiring a lot of people and finding labs. We actually
16 provide the service for them and a lot of strategic guidance.

17 Q. Can you briefly describe your education, Dr. Furfine.

18 A. I got an undergraduate degree from Washington
19 University in St. Louis in chemistry. I got a graduate PhD
20 degree at Brandeis University in biochemistry. And I did
21 postdoctoral work at the University of California, San
22 Francisco, in molecular parasitology. That's the study of the
23 gory details of how parasites work.

24 Q. What did you do after that?

25 A. I went pretty much straight into industry at that

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 point, in fact, to pursue trying to learn how to be a drug
2 hunter, which I've become. And that's why I went to Burroughs
3 Wellcome to start. It was a fairly medium- to large-sized
4 pharmaceutical company.

5 Q. How long did you stay there?

6 A. I was there about 13 years. And from there I went to
7 Regeneron.

8 Q. And while you were at Burroughs Wellcome did you do
9 any work on formulation research?

10 A. Yes, I did.

11 Q. Why did you decide to go to Regeneron at that point?

12 A. There were three big reasons for me. One is an
13 opportunity to work with a graduate student colleague of mine
14 who I had a lot of respect for, Neil Stahl, and to have an
15 opportunity to work with him again was an exciting thing for
16 me.

17 It was exciting that Regeneron was a smaller company
18 and was a biotechnology company working in protein therapeutics
19 and an opportunity to expand my understanding of new types of
20 drugs, proteins instead of small molecules that I was doing
21 earlier. So that was a good opportunity.

22 And there was also a major opportunity to expand my
23 understanding of the later stages of drug development and
24 discovery and to really work in more of the development end.
25 So that was also enticing to me.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. What year did you join Regeneron?

2 A. 2002.

3 Q. How long did you stay?

4 A. I was there till summer of 2006.

5 Q. And you said it was a relatively small company. Can
6 you describe what Regeneron was like during the years that you
7 worked there?

8 A. Yes. You know, there was several hundred people
9 there, probably 5 or 600 people, I would guess, but -- which is
10 much smaller than Burroughs Wellcome which is a major
11 pharmaceutical company. And I just was always interested in
12 the fact that there was just so much discussion of science at
13 Regeneron and how strong a force it was in driving
14 decision-making there. It was a great place in that regard.

15 Q. Since 2006, have you had any professional
16 relationship or association with Regeneron?

17 A. Nothing professional. I maintained friendships and
18 collegial interactions with people I know there, but nothing
19 other than that.

20 Q. Dr. Furfine, I'd like to discuss with you today your
21 role on the project with the aflibercept molecule.

22 What was your role at Regeneron during that time?

23 A. I was the head of preclinical development, it was
24 called. Preclinical development involves -- a big part of what
25 it involves is to do formulation development for the proteins

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 that we were working on.

2 A second, similar sized part was to really understand
3 what happens in animals, in humans, and to be able to measure
4 those things and prepare drugs to get ready to move into the
5 clinic.

6 Q. When did you begin working on the VEGF Trap or a VEGF
7 Trap?

8 A. I would say approximately a year after I was there,
9 maybe 2003.

10 Q. And what was the result of that project?

11 A. The biggest thing that came out of it was Eylea.

12 Q. Now, I'm going to place on the screen what's been
13 marked as PTX 2 in this case.

14 Dr. Furfine, is this the patent that describes and
15 claims your inventions working on the project on aflibercept?

16 A. Yes, it is.

17 Q. We've highlighted various people who are listed as
18 inventors. The first one, Eric Furfine, we know.

19 Who is Daniel Dix?

20 A. Daniel Dix was the head of the formulation group that
21 reported to me.

22 Q. How about Kenneth Graham? Who is he?

23 A. Kenneth was a scientist in the formulation group, and
24 he reported to Dan.

25 Q. And Kelly Frye, who is that?

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Kelly Frye was also a formulation scientist that
2 reported to Dan.

3 Q. Dr. Yancopoulos, from whom the Court heard yesterday,
4 is not listed as an inventor on the patent.

5 What was his role vis-a-vis the project that you were
6 working on with aflibercept?

7 A. Yeah. I mean, as a senior leader in the company,
8 George was very intimately involved in all the things that were
9 required to move a drug into the clinic and follow it
10 throughout the clinic. And he stayed abreast of the work that
11 we were doing to prepare drugs to be ready to go into clinical
12 trials and to be able to maintain them in clinical trials.

13 Q. Did you meet with Dr. Yancopoulos during this period?

14 A. Absolutely. Yes, on a regular basis.

15 Q. Now, we've highlighted under Number 73 there
16 "Assignee: Regeneron Pharmaceuticals."

17 What is your understanding about how Regeneron
18 Pharmaceuticals is the assignee of the patent that you helped
19 invent?

20 A. All employees of Regeneron were required to assign
21 their inventions to the company. That was a condition of your
22 employment.

23 Q. Was that true throughout the time that you were at
24 Regeneron?

25 A. Yes, it was, absolutely.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. Now, we've been talking in this case about
2 aflibercept. What is aflibercept?

3 A. Aflibercept is a man-made, humanly devised protein
4 where you take two receptors that are normally on the surface
5 of the cell and you genetically engineer them to be on an
6 antibody part. We call that the FC domain.

7 So you make this construct of receptor domains fused
8 to an antibody part, and that creates a drug.

9 Q. And when you say they're fused, does that make them
10 what we've heard of called as a fusion protein?

11 A. Correct. It's referred to commonly as a fusion
12 protein.

13 Q. And was aflibercept the only VEGF blocker known at
14 the time that you were working on the project?

15 A. No, it was not.

16 Q. Were there any prominent VEGF blockers that you were
17 knowing about and following at the time?

18 A. Two of the most prominent VEGF blockers were Avastin,
19 or bevacizumab is the genetic name, and Lucentis, or it was
20 ranibizumab at that time because it wasn't approved when we
21 first started working on it.

22 Q. Who was developing those molecules?

23 A. Genentech was the company that was doing that.

24 Q. And at the time you were working on your project, who
25 was Genentech in the field of biotechnology and in the field of

1 VEGF?

2 A. Genentech were really leaders in both of those
3 spaces. They were probably the premier company in protein
4 therapeutics, and they were arguably the premier company in
5 understanding VEGF biology and pursuing drugs that modulate or
6 inhibit VEGF.

7 Q. Who did you understand to be leading their VEGF
8 development?

9 A. A lot of the scientific leadership came from a man
10 named Napoleon Ferrara, who is arguably the father of VEGF and
11 Avastin.

12 Q. How did Regeneron compare to Genentech at the time?

13 A. Analogous to us being David in the David and Goliath.

14 Q. Was aflibercept initially being pursued by Regeneron
15 to treat eye diseases?

16 A. Not originally, no. It was treating cancer.

17 Q. Did you participate in that work?

18 A. I did, yes.

19 Q. Did there come time when Regeneron considered using
20 aflibercept to treat eye diseases?

21 A. Yes, we did.

22 Q. And at the time you began the project, did you
23 consider the project of formulating aflibercept to treat eye
24 diseases easy or hard?

25 A. We considered that it would be a challenging,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 difficult problem.

2 Q. Why is that?

3 A. First of all, aflibercept itself being a fusion
4 protein was a challenge because there just wasn't that much
5 knowledge on how to formulate and what the behaviors of those
6 types of molecules, of fusion proteins general.

7 And the second reason was there just wasn't a lot of
8 experience in the industry in developing formulations that were
9 going to be injected intravitreally.

10 Q. Did the fact that aflibercept Trap VEGF mean that it
11 could be used to treat diseases in the retina?

12 A. No. It had to reach the retina in order to be able
13 to do that, both block VEGF and reach the site of action.

14 Q. Now, you mentioned ranibizumab, which was one of the
15 two molecules that Genentech was developing.

16 What was your understanding about for what diseases
17 Genentech was pursuing ranibizumab?

18 A. My understanding was they were only pursuing retinal
19 diseases with ranibizumab.

20 Q. Did you consider aflibercept to be like ranibizumab
21 for purposes of treating eye diseases?

22 A. It was similar in a very high-level sense in that
23 they're both protein therapeutics, but the chemical nature of
24 these two drugs was very, very different, and they were
25 different classes of proteins.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. Did they have any other differences that you
2 considered to be important for purposes of your project?

3 A. Yes. Aflibercept was considerably larger than
4 ranibizumab was.

5 Q. What do you mean by larger or smaller in the context
6 of molecules or proteins?

7 A. So what we mean by larger is molecular weight, kind
8 of the space a molecule takes up. And the ranibizumab molecule
9 was about a third the size of a full antibody. So it's an
10 antibody part. It's in some ways considered an antibody, but
11 it's really a part of an antibody, the FAB domain. And that's
12 about a third of the size of a total antibody.

13 And the VEGF Trap or aflibercept is much more similar
14 in size to an antibody than it is to ranibizumab.

15 Q. Was a molecular weight or the weight the only thing
16 you considered in terms of the size?

17 A. No. So the molecular weight of aflibercept was a
18 little bit smaller than an antibody, but we felt like it
19 behaved more like the size of an antibody. It's kind of like
20 if you -- could make a football analogy where you get somebody
21 who's a fullback might be or a running back might be, this
22 relatively heavy, relatively dense, small, compact person; and
23 then you have a wide receiver who might weigh even maybe a
24 little bit less but be much bigger, might have more trouble
25 fitting in an airplane seat because of their -- they just take

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 up more space.

2 Q. And so was aflibercept more like the wide receiver or
3 like the fullback?

4 A. More like the wide receiver and, therefore, more
5 similar to an antibody in size, despite its actual weight being
6 somewhat less.

7 Q. And was aflibercept in the same class of molecules as
8 ranibizumab?

9 A. No. As I mentioned, ranibizumab was an antibody or
10 considered an antibody as it was part of an antibody, and
11 aflibercept was a receptor fusion protein. It had receptor
12 domains on it that were previously in a normal setting on the
13 surface of a cell and bore no resemblance to the structures of
14 an antibody.

15 Q. Based on your understanding at the time, does a
16 formulation that works to stabilize one protein in a class work
17 to stabilize a separate protein in a class?

18 A. No, not necessarily.

19 Q. Why not?

20 A. The chemical nature of even two antibodies can be
21 very different, and it's the chemical nature of those
22 antibodies, how charged they are, hydrophobic they are --
23 hydrophobic meaning kind of a dislike of water, if you will.
24 Depending on the nature, they could be very different things
25 that are required to maintain their stability in solution.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. Did you understand that a formulation that stabilizes
2 an antibody could be used to stabilize a fusion protein?

3 A. Definitely not. The differences between a fusion
4 protein's chemical nature is even more different than an
5 antibody to an antibody.

6 Q. And I should have asked you this before. When you
7 came to Regeneron in 2002, did you start working on protein
8 formulations immediately?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Was it your understanding, Dr. Furfine, that you
11 could take an existing antibody formulation, take out the
12 antibody, and put in a different molecule such as a fusion
13 protein?

14 A. No. That's not how we do formulation discovery. We
15 have a path where we do things that are fit for purpose. You
16 decide what's going to be used for, you decide the nature of
17 the molecule you're formulating, and you design the formulation
18 for that.

19 Q. Would it even be allowed to make that kind of
20 substitution to make your product that way?

21 A. Absolutely not. It's a cardinal rule of formulation
22 science and drug discovery generally that you only put things
23 in that you need. You have to actually go through the process
24 of showing that you need something and figuring out exactly not
25 only that you need it but how much to put in, and that includes

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 the drug itself.

2 Q. Now, you said a moment ago that you had to get into
3 the proper areas of the eye. I just want to put up a figure on
4 the screen from Exhibit 579. That's PTX 579.

5 When you were working on the project on aflibercept,
6 what was your understanding about where the molecule had to go
7 to treat the diseases you were targeting?

8 A. It would help if I had --

9 MR. BERL: May I approach, Your Honor?

10 THE COURT: You may.

11 THE WITNESS: So you see the word "choroid" here.
12 This is the -- roughly the place in the eyeball where you would
13 stick the needle, and it would go through the sclera here and
14 into this kind of like peach-colored area. That's called the
15 vitreous. So you would directly inject the drug right into the
16 vitreous.

17 Now, the drug will freely over time, maybe about a
18 day, diffuse throughout the vitreous, but the key is you see
19 this lighter yellow-colored part that abuts the vitreous here,
20 that goes here, that's the retina. So it has to be able to get
21 out of the vitreous and into the retina.

22 It also needs to be able to get past the retina into
23 this next darker red color next to the light yellow. That's
24 called the choroid. Those are the two places where the disease
25 happens, the choroid and the retina. So the drug needs to get

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 out of the vitreous, needs to penetrate these two tissues in
2 order to work.

3 BY MR. BERL:

4 Q. And what was your understanding at the time about
5 what kind of molecules would be most likely to get in
6 significant amounts into the retina and choroid?

7 A. So there was evidence from our colleagues,
8 competitors at Genentech that said that larger molecules,
9 antibody-sized molecules, essentially stayed mostly in the
10 vitreous and did not penetrate the retina; but smaller
11 molecules, like ranibizumab, which is a third of the size of an
12 antibody, was able to actually get into those tissues where the
13 disease biology happens.

14 Q. Let's take a look -- it's in your binder as well --
15 at Exhibit 1848. Can you identify this document for the Court?

16 A. Yes. This is the paper that I was referring to from
17 Genentech that compared the antibody to the ranibizumab.

18 Q. And did you read this article when you were working
19 on your aflibercept project at Regeneron?

20 A. Yes, I did.

21 Q. And you mentioned Dr. Ferrara earlier. Is he one of
22 the authors of this article?

23 A. Yes, he is, right here.

24 Q. Let's take a look at the abstract, and we've
25 highlighted part of the abstract on the first page.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Can you explain what Genentech was conveying and what
2 you understood about it when you were working on your project?

3 A. Right. So you can see right here they point out the
4 difference in molecular weight or the size. So you can see
5 it's 150 versus about 50. So it's a third the size; so that's
6 essentially consistent with what I was saying. And that the
7 antibody, the bigger molecule, did not penetrate the retinal
8 tissues whereas the ranibizumab, or the FAB fragment of the
9 antibody, was able to penetrate the tissues in this study.

10 Q. What was the principle of this -- what was the
11 relevance of this principle to your work on aflibercept at the
12 time?

13 A. Well, as I mentioned before, because aflibercept was
14 more similar in size to an antibody, we were concerned that we
15 could see the same thing and that, if we gave an intravitreal
16 injection of aflibercept, it might not get to the place where
17 we needed it to go to affect the disease. So we were concerned
18 about that.

19 Q. Did you understand this issue of size to be relevant
20 to Genentech's development of ranibizumab?

21 A. Absolutely. I think that's partly why they published
22 this paper too. And they clearly thought that this smaller
23 molecule was the better way to go, and that's what they pushed
24 forward with.

25 Q. When you read this when you were working at

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 Regeneron, were you certain that Genentech was correct about
2 what it was saying?

3 A. I wasn't. I was skeptical of this article. As a
4 scientist, we're often skeptical of articles and not that they
5 think of everything. And I didn't -- I wasn't sure that this
6 was right.

7 Q. What did you do in view of your skepticism?

8 A. Usually what scientists do when they're skeptical is
9 they do their own experiment, and we did a study in rabbits.

10 Q. We'll get to that in a moment.

11 This issue of getting into the retina and the
12 choroid, is it all or none like a light switch, Dr. Furfine?

13 A. No. I think there are degrees of penetration, and
14 there can be examples sometimes where there is a sharp cutoff,
15 but I don't think that was the case here. This is a gradient,
16 if you will.

17 Q. Did Regeneron only have aflibercept to block VEGF, or
18 did it have smaller molecules too?

19 A. We had small molecules. Well, we had something
20 called a Mini-Trap. Kind of like what the FAB or the
21 ranibizumab was a part of the antibody, we had the Mini-Trap
22 that was a part of aflibercept that, in case I was wrong, then
23 we would have the smaller molecule to move forward with as
24 well.

25 Q. Just so it's clear, why did Regeneron create the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Mini-Trap?

2 A. Really in response to this report and other reports
3 that suggested that smaller things do penetrate the retina
4 better than larger things do.

5 Q. Let's take a look at one of your internal documents
6 at the time. We'll call up PTX 83.

7 And, Dr. Furfine, is this an internal clinical
8 program strategy meeting from the 14th of June 2003?

9 A. Yes, it is.

10 Q. And if we look on the first page, there's a number 4,
11 formulation issues, Eric.

12 Who is that referring to?

13 A. That's this Eric.

14 Q. That's you?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Let's take a look at page 3 of the document,
17 Dr. Furfine.

18 THE COURT: For the record, I'm fascinated by this
19 time travel with documents and such. It looks like they were
20 doing MSP. Very excited about this. Go ahead.

21 MR. BERL: It's probably the dot matrix printer or
22 something.

23 THE COURT: As an aspiring boomer, I have greatly
24 enjoyed this trip down memory lane.

25 MR. BERL: I'm with you.

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 BY MR. BERL:

2 Q. So looking at page 3, Dr. Furfine, it says "Systemic
3 IV Administration, single-dose escalation IV with full-length
4 VEGF Trap."

5 Can you explain what that means.

6 A. So this was -- IV stands for intravenous or the
7 abbreviation for intravenous. So the idea here was to inject
8 the VEGF Trap directly into the vein so you get what we call
9 systemic exposure, and then with that systemic exposure you can
10 penetrate the ocular tissue to treat the disease. And then
11 these are the doses that were tested. You start low, and you
12 go up higher.

13 Q. What is the full-length VEGF Trap referring to there?

14 A. That's aflibercept, full-size aflibercept.

15 Q. Why were you considering intravenous systemic
16 administration to treat AMD with aflibercept?

17 A. There was evidence preclinically and clinically that
18 the aflibercept -- that drugs could penetrate the retina and
19 aflibercept preclinically could penetrate the retina after a
20 systemic exposure. And so this was a good way to test the
21 hypothesis in humans.

22 Q. And at this time did you know that you could get
23 aflibercept into the retina by injection into the eye?

24 A. We did not. And part of the reason for doing the
25 systemic study is that we maintained concern for that.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 MR. BERL: I apologize, Your Honor. I think I said
2 this is Exhibit 83. It's actually Exhibit 82.

3 THE COURT: Understood. Thank you.

4 MR. BERL: Sorry.

5 BY MR. BERL:

6 Q. Now, you had mentioned the Mini-Trap before. Were
7 you considering the Mini-Trap for systemic intravenous
8 administration?

9 A. No, only intravitreal.

10 Q. Let's take a look at the two bullets on page 2 of
11 Exhibit 82. It says "Local administration - Full-Length Trap"
12 and "Local administration - Mini-Trap."

13 What is that referencing?

14 A. Local administration here refers to an intravitreal
15 injection, so a direct injection to the eye where that needle,
16 as I was pointing out in that eye figure, it goes directly into
17 the vitreous. So this is the possibility of doing both of
18 these treatments using both of these drugs, it being
19 administered intravitreally.

20 Q. Both of these drugs being aflibercept and the
21 Mini-Trap?

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. Let's take a look in that section under "Issues &
24 Risks." And in that section under "Local administration -
25 Full-Length Trap," we've highlighted "intravitreal PK."

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 What does that mean?

2 A. So PK stands for pharmacokinetics. That's the
3 science of seeing where a drug goes after you inject it or
4 administer it, could be oral too. In this case we were
5 injecting it. You see where it goes and how long it stays
6 there. So you want to see does it penetrate certain tissues?
7 Does it stay in the place you went? And how long is it in
8 those places?

9 Q. Why is that listed as a risk or issue?

10 A. As we discussed a little earlier, we weren't sure
11 that the drug was going to penetrate the retina after we shot
12 it into the vitreous. And so we wanted to do our own study to
13 see whether it did or didn't.

14 Q. Had Regeneron, at the time you were working on the
15 project, compared the efficacy of aflibercept injected
16 intravitreally in a mouse compared to systemically in a mouse?

17 A. Yes. There was a study done in the Campochiaro Lab
18 where those things were compared directly.

19 Q. And if we turn to Exhibit 1785 in your binder -- and
20 we'll put the first page of that on the screen -- is this the
21 publication that you're referencing?

22 A. Yes, it is.

23 Q. And is the first author Saishin from 2013?

24 A. That's correct. And here's the Campochiaro that I
25 referred to.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Just at a high level, what was the result of this
2 study?

3 A. The high-level result was that, if you inject the
4 drug in the mice to give systemic exposure -- this was not
5 intravenous, it was subcutaneous, but that still gives a big
6 blood level and allows it to go into the retina from the blood.
7 We compared that with an intravitreal injection to see if it
8 could reduce the effects and the disease model that happened in
9 the retina.

10 Q. What did better, the systemic administration or the
11 intravitreal administration of aflibercept?

12 A. The subcutaneous injection. So the systemic exposure
13 suppressed the disease model in the retina much more than the
14 intravitreal did.

15 Q. You mentioned a moment ago a pharmacokinetic study in
16 rabbits.

17 Was that an important experiment in the course of
18 your project in developing Eylea?

19 A. Yes, it was a critical experiment.

20 Q. Let's take a look at Exhibit 1079.

21 Can you identify this 2005 document?

22 A. Yeah. This is a clinical investigator's brochure.

23 Q. And if we move to page 4 of the document, in the
24 table of contents, under "Pharmacokinetics of VEGF Trap,"
25 what's Section 8.2 about?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. That's the study that we did where we administered
2 the Trap in rabbit eyes intravitreally and we measured how long
3 it was there -- as I measured, pharmacokinetics is how long
4 it's there -- and what tissue did it distribute it to. So did
5 it get in the vitreous? Did it get in the retina? Did it get
6 in the choroid? The two tissues, retina and choroid, where the
7 disease would happen.

8 Q. Let's go to page 46 now, Section 8.2 of the same
9 document, Exhibit 1079. And we've highlighted some language on
10 the screen.

11 Can you explain, first of all, what is being measured
12 in this study, Dr. Furfine?

13 A. Yeah. So we developed assays to measure the drug,
14 the VEGF Trap, in the vitreous, in the choroid, and in the
15 retina. And we collected those tissues after we injected the
16 drug, and we measured the drug levels in those drugs. And
17 here, as we say, the bottom-line result is, in fact, the VEGF
18 Trap did penetrate the retina and the choroid.

19 Q. Let me just back up a moment ago. I want to break
20 that down a little.

21 You said you developed assays. Is that another word
22 for tests?

23 A. Yes. Sorry.

24 Q. No problem. That's okay.

25 You said you measured in the vitreous, the retina,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 and the choroid. Did I get that right?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. Where is it easier to measure how much aflibercept is
4 present, in the vitreous or in the retina and choroid?

5 A. It's easiest to measure the drug in the vitreous.

6 Q. Why did you measure in the retina and choroid also?

7 A. The retina and choroid, as I mentioned, are the sites
8 where the disease biology happens. It's where the VEGF is
9 produced; it's where it needs to get blocked. If the drug does
10 not get to the site of action of the biology, you can't block
11 the biology.

12 Q. We looked at general results here. I want to look at
13 the more detailed results.

14 If we could turn to Exhibit PTX 3257. Is this a
15 report about the rabbit pharmacokinetics study?

16 A. Yes, it is.

17 Q. Let's turn to page 5 of this report.

18 When was this study conducted?

19 A. In July of 2004.

20 Q. Did you receive the results soon after that?

21 A. Yes, I did.

22 Q. And was -- were these data kept confidentially when
23 they received it at Regeneron or was it published when they
24 received it?

25 A. They were confidential to Regeneron.

1 Q. Let's take a look at page 100 with the results. And
2 we've highlighted the sentence that begins "despite the
3 differences described above."

4 What does this sentence convey?

5 A. The idea here is a comparison of a relatively large
6 molecule, the full-length Trap, to the Mini-Trap, a smaller
7 molecule; and that despite those size differences, both drugs
8 got into the retina and the choroid at respectable and
9 reasonable levels.

10 Q. What did you call the retina or related structure in
11 this document?

12 A. The desired site of action. That's the place where
13 the disease biology happens, and you need to get your drug
14 there.

15 Q. Did you think it was enough for aflibercept just to
16 get into the vitreous?

17 A. Absolutely not.

18 Q. Did you think that having aflibercept in the vitreous
19 would somehow get rid of the VEGF in the vitreous and then suck
20 VEGF out of the retina and thereby treat retinal diseases?

21 A. I can't imagine a way that would work.

22 Q. Was that finding that we show here in the rabbit
23 pharmacokinetic study, that aflibercept will get to the desired
24 site of action in the retina and related structure, good news
25 or bad news?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. This was very encouraging to us. It meant that we
2 actually had a potential path forward to move forward with a
3 program where we did an intravitreal injection and could expect
4 that the drug would get to the site of action that we desired
5 and have good effects on the biology of blocking VEGF.

6 Q. Dr. Furfine, without this information, would you have
7 decided to move forward with intravitreal injection of
8 aflibercept?

9 A. No, we would not have.

10 Q. If not enough aflibercept had reached what you call
11 here the desired site of action, what would you have done?

12 A. We would have probably switched to the Mini-Trap,
13 which would have -- you know, based on this study and on the
14 analogy to ranibizumab, would have worked better to penetrate
15 that tissue.

16 Q. Now, Doctor, I'd like to move to a different topic
17 now, which is the dose or concentration that was used in your
18 aflibercept project.

19 What dose did you understand Genentech to be pursuing
20 for ranibizumab?

21 A. It's a 10 mg/mL solution that results in a
22 500-microgram dose because you take 50 microliters of that
23 solution and inject it. So 10 mg/mL equals 500 micrograms.

24 Q. How did you understand that 10 milligrams per
25 milliliter of ranibizumab that Genentech was using to map onto

1 the aflibercept that you were studying at the time?

2 A. We were looking at 40 mg/mL solution.

3 Q. How did you try to -- how did you map -- how would
4 10 milliliters of ranibizumab correspond or map onto
5 aflibercept?

6 A. So they would be similar doses in that regard, but
7 because the aflibercept was a more potent molecule, you would
8 expect it might work even better even at the same levels or
9 even slightly lower levels.

10 Q. If you wanted to make a similar or a me-too version
11 of ranibizumab that had aflibercept instead, what kind of
12 concentration would you have used in the formulation?

13 A. By the same analogy, given that the drug was somewhat
14 more potent, you would not have to go any higher than 10 and
15 you could potentially go lower, but you would have to prove
16 that in the clinic.

17 Q. Now, did you follow Genentech's literature regarding
18 ranibizumab when you were working on your project?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And let's put up on the screen Exhibit PTX 1839, the
21 Gaudreault article from 2005.

22 Did you read this article when it was published?

23 A. Yes, around that time, somewhat after.

24 Q. While you were still working on the project?

25 A. Yes, near the time when it was published.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Turning to page 2 of the article, can you explain
2 this experiment and how you understood it at the time?

3 A. Yes. So this was a study where the drug was injected
4 into the animal eyes and they were assessing the
5 pharmacokinetics; so what the tissue distribution was and how
6 long it was staying.

7 And during that assessment they also looked at if
8 there were any adverse effects of these injections into the
9 eye, and you could see that at the lower dose, the 10 mg/mL
10 solution, there was relatively small amounts of inflammation;
11 it was here absent to moderate.

12 But at the higher dose the 40 mg/mL formulation or
13 2 micrograms, that high dose, four times higher now, had
14 substantial and concerning inflammation after this single
15 injection.

16 Q. Is that the moderate to severe information?

17 A. Correct, yes.

18 Q. It says in the next sentence that it had been
19 completely resolved by day eight.

20 Was that comforting?

21 A. Not really. I mean, I guess better than being there
22 the whole time, but not good.

23 Q. How often would you administer a drug like this
24 approximately?

25 A. So as we know now, these drugs are administered

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 roughly monthly. And, you know, so to have this happen every
2 time you administer the drug would not be an acceptable
3 tolerability profile.

4 Q. Now, just so the record's clear, what drug is being
5 administered in this Gaudreault study?

6 A. It's ranibizumab.

7 Q. You said it was a pharmacokinetic study. Was there a
8 long discussion of the health findings of the toxicity or was
9 it more of a shorter, minor discussion?

10 A. It was a more minor discussion, but still it pointed
11 to an issue that we were concerned about.

12 Q. Was this encouraging or discouraging at the time that
13 you read it for purposes of potentially using a higher
14 concentration?

15 A. This was quite discouraging for using a higher dose.
16 I mean, we clearly see a lot of inflammation here, an
17 unacceptable amount of inflammation. Apparently Genentech
18 found it to be unacceptable as well because they moved forward
19 with the 10.

20 Q. We'll look at that in a moment.

21 Let me just understand, though, Doctor, if you're
22 trying to treat a disease, why wouldn't you just use as much as
23 possible, the highest concentration you could?

24 A. I think this is the classic example of why you don't
25 do that, is that you can get adverse effects. In drug

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 discovery almost everything we do is a yin and a yang. There's
2 a benefit to be gotten from having a lot of something, and
3 there's also a downside to be had of those things. And you
4 have to find that balance of safety versus risk, efficacy
5 versus adverse effects. And, you know, the higher you go, the
6 higher the chances you're going to get an adverse effect that
7 may dampen the benefit that you get.

8 Q. What about stability in formulation?

9 A. Higher concentration formulations with proteins in
10 particular are much more challenging to do.

11 Q. What happens when it's challenging? What happens
12 with high concentrations sometimes?

13 A. High-concentration formulations of proteins often
14 aggregate and precipitate out of solution and cause particles.

15 Q. Is that a problem?

16 A. That's a big problem, and it's probably more of a
17 problem for an eye drug than it is for a regular drug.

18 Q. Why is that a problem for an eye drug?

19 A. So there's three big reasons why particles are a
20 problem for an eye drug. These are probably somewhat obvious,
21 but one is, if you put particles in the eye, you can imagine
22 obscuring your vision. And, in fact, that can happen.

23 The other thing is you can induce inflammation,
24 which, in fact, we see inflammation here. We don't know that
25 it was particles, but it very well could have been.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 And the third thing is you can stimulate an immune
2 response to the drug that you've injected. And if you get an
3 immune response to the drug, you can end up neutralizing the
4 drug so it doesn't work anymore.

5 Q. And when you said we --

6 THE COURT: I'm sorry. What do you mean when you say
7 "immune response," Doctor?

8 THE WITNESS: So what happens -- immune response can
9 be a number of things; so it's a good question. So a lot of
10 times you get an antibody response, like to COVID. And if you
11 make antibodies to COVID, you clear the COVID. If you make
12 antibodies to your drug, you clear your drug.

13 THE COURT: Understood.

14 Sorry, Mr. Berl.

15 MR. BERL: Thank you. We're all here to help you
16 understand. Doesn't matter if anyone else does.

17 BY MR. BERL:

18 Q. You said in your answer we see inflammation here. I
19 just want the record to be clear. When you said there's
20 inflammation here, were you referring to the Gaudreault
21 reference on the screen, Exhibit 1839?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. Now, let's go back with that in mind to the rabbit PK
24 study that you had mentioned, which is PTX 3257, and the
25 results at page 100. We looked at this paragraph before. I'd

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 now like to ask you about the language further down in this
2 paragraph about how long the protein can be present in the
3 tissue.

4 Can you explain what result you obtained in your
5 study?

6 A. Yes. So as you can see here, the drug was present in
7 the tissue for at least through 28 days. And, again, this is a
8 yin and a yang situation. If you have a lot of drug around for
9 a long time, there's a chance it could have an adverse effect.
10 But if you have a drug around for a long time, it could be
11 having efficacy for that time.

12 I was a little bit more on the optimist side of
13 things in this case, but nonetheless one has a concern that you
14 can have a problem with it, and you need to do further testing
15 to sort that out.

16 Q. To be clear, Dr. Furfine, did you expect to obtain
17 this result in the pharmacokinetic study in the rabbits of the
18 protein being present in the tissue for up to 672 hours?

19 A. No, we did not expect this.

20 Q. Is that a high number or a low number?

21 A. It's a high number. This was, roughly speaking,
22 about twice as good as ranibizumab, and that was encouraging to
23 us.

24 Q. And just again so the record's clear, was this public
25 at the time?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. It was not.

2 Q. Now, given all the concerns that you've mentioned,
3 why did you end up using a higher concentration?

4 A. So when you see one advantage -- in this case, it was
5 how long it was staying in the eye; it was staying in the eye
6 longer than ranibizumab -- you can actually leverage that to
7 your advantage in another way by adding more.

8 So if you add more of something that's longer-lived,
9 you kind of double down on the longer-lived. So every time you
10 double the concentration that you inject, you get an extra
11 half-life. If your half-life is already longer than
12 ranibizumab and now you're getting more of them, this was an
13 exciting possibility to reduce the number of injections a
14 patient would have to get. And so we were excited about that
15 possibility.

16 Q. Did you still have all those concerns you mentioned
17 about toxicity and stability?

18 A. Absolutely.

19 Q. So what did you do in view of those concerns?

20 A. We did a lot of experiments to figure out whether we
21 could make a stable formulation and whether we were going to
22 have toxicology that was associated with higher concentrations.

23 Q. I'd like to discuss some of those experiments with
24 you. Let's turn to Exhibit PTX 81.

25 What is this document, Dr. Furfine?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. This is a summary of a lot of the nonclinical work
2 that we did, including the formulation development to support
3 clinical studies.

4 Q. You've been using the term "nonclinical" or
5 "preclinical." Is that experimentation done before you
6 actually administer something to human beings?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Now, let's turn to the Bates number ending in 262
9 which is on page 10 of the document. And this is under -- at
10 the top of the page we can see here 1.3. It's a little faded,
11 but it says "Summary of Formulation Development." And then
12 there's a Table 3.

13 Can you explain what's shown in Table 3.

14 A. Yes. This shows four formulations. Two of them are
15 intravitreal formulations, and then the other two are what was
16 used in the cancer programs for systemic, either IV or
17 subcutaneous is SC.

18 The intravitreal formulation 1 there was the first
19 formulation that we moved forward with into clinical studies.

20 Q. Why did you start with this formulation, labeled
21 ITV-1?

22 A. So as I mentioned, you don't want to have anything in
23 your formulation that is, you know, more than what you need or
24 have a reason for having it there. So this was a minimalist
25 approach that we took to this formulation. And we wanted to

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 make sure that we were using things that we thought had a high
2 probability of success in the eye because there wasn't a lot of
3 experience with eye formulations.

4 And so we focused on mostly excipients that we knew
5 actually were there already. Sodium phosphate, of course, is
6 in the eye; sodium chloride, saline, same thing is in the eye.
7 So we used ingredients here that we thought would be reasonably
8 well-tolerated. It was kind of a minimalist approach, if you
9 will.

10 Q. Didn't you already have formulations of aflibercept
11 that had been developed for systemic treatment of cancer?

12 A. Yes. The two furthest to the right, IV and SC, were
13 already developed.

14 Q. Did you consider starting with those in your research
15 on an ophthalmic formulation?

16 A. That didn't occur to us. That's not how you do
17 science.

18 When you make a formulation, when you make a drug or
19 a drug product, there's this idea of fit for purpose. You have
20 to decide what you're going to do with the drug, what's it
21 going to be used for, and what are you stabilizing.

22 And so you don't start with something that was made
23 for something else to use it for something completely
24 different. You have to start over again and ask your question:
25 What's the right thing to do in this situation?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 And so that's what we did. We started over.

2 Q. Are there considerations that are relevant for
3 intravitreal formulations that are less important for
4 intravenous or subcutaneous formulations?

5 A. Absolutely. One big one, and maybe one of the
6 biggest ones, was that there's a stress that happens in
7 intravitreal formulations that wouldn't happen in systemic
8 formulations.

9 So when you do an injection in the eye, you can
10 imagine you want to use the smallest needle you can because who
11 wants a big needle in their eye?

12 THE COURT: That is well established.

13 THE WITNESS: See, I don't have to do too many more
14 studies on that. It's already known.

15 So what you do is you use these really narrow-bore
16 needles. It's a very thin hull. What happens is, when you
17 force solutions, protein solutions especially, through a
18 narrow-bore needle, you create what's called shear stress.
19 It's like a pressure, and that creates a stress that can cause
20 a protein to come out of solution.

21 So you need to add agents into your formulation,
22 ingredients that stabilize the solution and keep the drug in
23 solution under these kinds of stressful situations. That would
24 not happen for IV and SC.

25 THE COURT: When you say "in solution," I assume you

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 mean still floating in the carrying liquid, for lack of any
2 scientific term.

3 THE WITNESS: That's exactly right. That's perfectly
4 scientific.

5 And what happens here, in fact, is if you don't
6 survive shear stress, you see particles that are clearly -- by
7 definition, a particle is not in solution. So, in fact, it's
8 black and white. They're either in solution or they're not.

9 THE COURT: And in this form, again, because we're
10 using a needle and a syringe, particles might be attached to
11 the syringe itself or --

12 THE WITNESS: No. The manufacturer of syringe
13 needles and the like has them clear of, really, any detectable
14 particles. And so if you saw particles after shooting the drug
15 through it, it would be solely the result of the protein coming
16 out of the solution.

17 MR. BERL: I think what Your Honor -- what the Court
18 may have been asking is do the particles get stuck in the
19 needle? Is what you're asking, Your Honor?

20 THE COURT: Yeah. You're talking about shear stress
21 which I'm envisioning sort of three lanes of traffic merging as
22 one, right?

23 THE WITNESS: That's right. That's right. That's
24 right.

25 THE COURT: You have all that there. So when that

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 occurs and that buildup occurs, if the protein falls out of
2 solution, where does it go? Where do the particles exist?

3 THE WITNESS: So most -- it's a great question. So
4 most of the time they actually don't clog the needle, but they
5 could. If you had a severe enough response, you could actually
6 clog the needle.

7 What usually happens is you shoot them into the eye,
8 and that's where you get your trouble.

9 THE COURT: Okay.

10 BY MR. BERL:

11 Q. Do you ever want to shoot a particle into the eye,
12 Doctor?

13 A. No, no, you don't.

14 THE COURT: Again, I believe that also has been well
15 established.

16 BY MR. BERL:

17 Q. Now, let's take a look at the same page further down,
18 262 in Exhibit 81.

19 Was the ITV-1 formulation that you said you started
20 with, was that ultimately a formulation that met your needs for
21 intravitreal administration?

22 A. No. In fact, it was problematic in this very
23 stability test that we were just referring to. It did not
24 withstand shear stress to the degree that we wanted it to and
25 had a second problem that it didn't stand up -- withstand heat

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 stress as well.

2 Q. But let's take a closer look at those data. If you
3 could turn to Exhibit PTX 2223 for a moment.

4 Are you familiar with this document, Dr. Furfine?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Is this a protocol for stability study?

7 A. It is.

8 Q. And we're looking at the first page here and it talks
9 about data from stability studies indicate that there's a
10 problem with the physical stability of VEGF Trap in the current
11 ITV formulation above 10 milligrams per milliliter VEGF Trap.
12 Do you see that?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. So first of all, when we say current ITV formulation,
15 was this referring to what you've been calling ITV-1 in your
16 testimony?

17 A. Yes. It was the first clinical formulation we used.

18 Q. When do you start to have problems with ITV-1, at
19 what concentrations?

20 A. Concentrations that were above the 10 mg/mL. So if
21 we wanted to go to 20 or 40 or whatever, that's where we
22 started to have issues where it was not surviving this syringe
23 needle test that we do. We have to -- you actually put it
24 through tests that mimic what's going to happen in real life.
25 So we say is it going to make it through without making

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 particle? We actually do the experiment before we stick it in
2 someone's eye.

3 THE COURT: Comforting.

4 MR. BERL: For all of us.

5 BY MR. BERL:

6 Q. Doctor, is that consistent with the principle you
7 articulated earlier that you get more instability and
8 aggregation at higher protein levels compared to lower?

9 A. Yes, it is.

10 Q. And let's take a look -- let me ask this: Before you
11 did this manipulation where you did the syringe, was all of the
12 aflibercept in the solution?

13 A. It started in the solution, yes.

14 Q. Let's go further down this page on 2223. The "in
15 addition" paragraph, if we could pull that up.

16 Is this another test that you conducted on your ITV-1
17 formulation?

18 A. Yes. This is an agitation stress study that we did,
19 and it's kind of analogous to a shear stress. Basically what
20 you do is you whip the solution around for long periods of time
21 and see whether it comes out of solution. It's like an extreme
22 agitation.

23 Q. Went you say you whip it around, is that referenced
24 on the document on the page as "vortexed"?

25 A. Vortexed, that's right. That's what we call it.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 "Vortex" is another word for whipping around.

2 THE COURT: Thank you.

3 BY MR. BERL:

4 Q. This document says -- Exhibit 2223 -- that the ITV-1
5 formulation has been shown to be prone to precipitate when
6 vortexed.

7 What does that mean?

8 A. That means the protein was coming out of solution.
9 It was precipitating when we stressed it by -- this is exactly
10 what it does, is it goes around in circles at a really high
11 rate. So it's like shaking it up as hard as you can, or even
12 more than that, for two hours.

13 Q. Before you shook it, was all of the aflibercept in
14 solution?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. And then when you shook it, was it still all in
17 solution?

18 A. No. It came out as a result of being stressed by the
19 shaking.

20 Q. Now, is this condition of vortexing or whipping it
21 around, as you've been calling it, is that relevant as to how
22 the drug's actually going to be used?

23 A. Absolutely. All the tests we do along this line are
24 called accelerated stability studies. The idea is you want to,
25 in a short time, mimic what happens in real life that might

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 include something that happens over a long time.

2 So there's a lot of shaking that can happen over the
3 course of time in preparing the drug in the manufacturing,
4 distributing it, bouncing around in the clinic, and so on and
5 so forth. And so you need to -- if you shake it up a lot in a
6 short period of time, you can mimic what happens for longer
7 times.

8 Q. Did you have any experience while you were at
9 Regeneron with things coming out of solution in actual use?

10 A. Yes. So with another program that preceded the VEGF
11 Trap was called the IL1 Trap. So we had a formulation that we
12 developed there, and we used a shorter vortex time. We only
13 did 30 minutes, not the two hours. And we thought that was
14 good enough at the time; we didn't know any better.

15 And what happened, disappointingly and kind of
16 interestingly, is that during a clinical study a few months
17 down the road when the manufacturing facility does its check on
18 how's the drug supply doing, they saw particulates coming out.
19 And we didn't anticipate that because we had never seen it
20 happen. And we, even in the stressful situation, didn't see it
21 happen.

22 So we instituted a new test in response to that,
23 which was essentially to vortex not for 30 minutes but now for
24 two hours because we didn't want this to happen to us again.

25 Q. Doctor, it says later on in the same paragraph on 22,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 23, "VEGF Trap no longer precipitated upon vortex when the
2 clinical DP was spiked with .03 percent polysorbate 20."

3 Can you explain what that means?

4 A. So basically we had to find an ingredient that we
5 could put in the formulation that would make it soluble under
6 the conditions of vortexing. And so one of the ones that we
7 tested is this organic cosolvent, polysorbate. We had prior to
8 that a cosolvent called PEG. We thought this one might be
9 better, and we tested it. And, in fact, it did work superiorly
10 to PEG.

11 Q. When you said keep it soluble under the conditions of
12 vortexing, are those conditions also relevant to actual use of
13 the product?

14 A. Yes. Everything we do in an accelerated stability
15 study is intended to mimic what happens in real life over
16 sometimes the same and sometimes over longer periods of time.

17 Q. So was this ITV-1 formulation that came out of
18 solution upon the needle test and being vortexed, is that
19 something you wanted to move forward with as a product?

20 A. No. It would have been unacceptable. It would have
21 been very high risk and probably would have failed.

22 Q. What did you do as a result of that?

23 A. We started examining new formulations where we put in
24 different ingredients that we thought would make it more stable
25 to this agitation and shear stress and also the thermal tests

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 that we do.

2 Q. Dr. Furfine, let's turn to Exhibits 97 and 98 and
3 show them together because they're associated. They're also in
4 your binder, but we'll put them on the screen.

5 Can you explain what Exhibit 97 and 98 are.

6 A. Yeah. So these are the stability tests with the new
7 formulations that had excipients or ingredients that we thought
8 would better stabilize the two problem areas, thermal
9 stability, heat, which also translates to shelf life. If you
10 can tolerate heat better, you're more likely to even last
11 longer in cold. There's kind of a correlation there. And then
12 also the agitation stability.

13 Q. So we'll get to the data in a moment. Is Exhibit 97
14 an email from November 2005 from Kelly Frye to various people
15 that you received?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Okay. And it says, "I've attached a chart with the
18 new formulations so that it's clear what the new formulations
19 consist of."

20 Do you see that?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And if we turn to Exhibit 98, PTX 98, its says, "New
23 ITV Formulations."

24 Is that the chart that Kelly Frye attached in the
25 email?

1 A. Yes, it is.

2 Q. And I want to take a look at this chart in
3 Exhibit 98. What is this showing?

4 A. This is showing what formulations we tested. They're
5 listed 1 through 8. Number 1, it says old. That's IVT-1.
6 It's the original one that we drove into the clinic that was
7 insufficient long term.

8 And then the others, if you look at the top row, the
9 columns show the ingredients we tested and in what
10 concentrations we tested them to see if we could make superior
11 formulations.

12 Q. So, for example, ITV-1, did that have any sucrose or
13 mannitol?

14 A. It did not.

15 Q. And then did you test at least one formulation with
16 sucrose, Formulation Number 41?

17 A. Yes. 4 was sucrose.

18 Q. Now, we see all these formulations with ingredients
19 and amounts. How did the formulations actually get made?

20 A. Laboratory scientists who are easily skilled to do
21 this. It's not a major problem.

22 Q. What kind of training or expertise or degrees did the
23 people who made these formulations require?

24 A. Nothing more than a bachelor's degree would be
25 required.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And how much training in making formulations in order
2 to take this information and turn it into something that has a
3 formulation?

4 A. I think if someone came in fresh out of school, a
5 matter of a week or two would probably be sufficient to get
6 them to know this.

7 Q. Now, I'd like to go through a couple of the
8 ingredients with you. It says "10mM" -- is that millimolar?

9 A. Millimolar yes.

10 Q. -- "phosphate." Was that in all of the formulations?

11 A. Yes, it was.

12 Q. And what is that?

13 A. That's a phosphate buffer. It's -- a buffer is used
14 to maintain the pH of the solution in a narrow range.

15 Q. And did you understand that other buffers could do
16 that too?

17 A. Yes, they could, of course.

18 Q. We have sucrose listed here. What did you understand
19 sucrose to be doing?

20 A. Sucrose in this case we were using primarily as a
21 thermal stabilizer, so basically make the protein more -- less
22 susceptible to heat and increase the shelf life.

23 Q. What was your understanding as to whether other
24 stabilizing agents other than sucrose could do that too?

25 A. They could potentially work. In fact, we tested

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 mannitol, which is a very similar chemical; it's the same class
2 of molecule. And, in fact, it did work to some degree.

3 Q. Now, if these ingredients are useful to maintain the
4 pH and to keep the solution -- keep the protein in solution
5 under stress like thermal conditions, why wouldn't you have
6 just included them in the first place?

7 A. Well, as I mentioned, you know, we take as strategy a
8 fit for purpose, first of all; and, second of all, you can't
9 add things that you don't know you need and you can't add more
10 of them than you need. And so you really need to do an
11 experiment to test what's my problem? And now what am I going
12 to add to solve that problem? And what's the least amount I
13 can add of it to solve the problem? You don't want to give
14 anything in a drug that you don't need to give.

15 Q. I see PS 20 listed here. Is that polysorbate 20?

16 A. Yes, it is.

17 Q. What did you understand that to be doing in the
18 formulations?

19 A. We refer to it as an organic cosolvent. It helps
20 stabilize and keep the drug in solution under stresses like
21 agitation and shear.

22 Q. What was your understanding about whether other
23 organic cosolvents other than polysorbate 20 could do that?

24 A. They can. In fact, PEG is right next to it and was
25 serving a similar purpose.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Let's take a look at PTX 86, Dr. Furfine. Can you
2 identify this document for the Court?

3 A. Yes. This is a meeting between -- our partner at
4 this time was Aventis, the pharmaceutical company partner. Was
5 a joint meeting between our teams to discuss the development of
6 the VEGF Trap.

7 Q. Just so the overall story's clear, is Aventis a
8 predecessor of Sanofi?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And if we go to page 11, did you attend this meeting?

11 A. I did.

12 Q. And did you present to Aventis about intravitreal
13 formulation issues relating to aflibercept in 2004?

14 A. Yes, I did.

15 Q. Let's take a look at what you said on page 5.

16 What did you say at the beginning of this paragraph?

17 A. Basically sort of what the data that we've shown so
18 far is that we needed an organic cosolvent to stabilize the
19 protein against agitation or shear stress induced coming out of
20 solution. We call it aggregation, but it's a forcing a
21 precipitation, not a solution.

22 Q. And what examples did you provide of organic
23 cosolvents in your 2004 presentation to Aventis?

24 A. As you can see there, there are PEG and polysorbate,
25 the same two that were on that table that we just were looking

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 at.

2 Q. How did you understand organic cosolvents like
3 polysorbate to work?

4 A. So proteins have a surface, and on that surface there
5 can be patches of different sort of chemical nature. And
6 sometimes there's a patch that we call a hydrophobic patch.
7 Hydrophobic, as I mentioned, means don't like water.

8 If you have two hydrophobic patches one on one
9 protein, one on the other one, they like to come together
10 because neither of them wants to be in water but they prefer --
11 hydrophobic likes hydrophobic, doesn't like water.

12 So when you have two hydrophobic patches, you can get
13 an aggregation that happens, and that's when the protein can
14 come out of solution.

15 If you have an organic cosolvent in there, that can
16 kind of coat or associate with that hydrophobic patch because
17 there are parts of polysorbate that are hydrophobic as well.
18 So the hydrophobic likes the hydrophobic, and they kind of
19 associate. And that blocks the protein from doing that because
20 it's already got polysorbate there. So, basically, it
21 stabilized it to hydrophobic against intermolecular, what we
22 call molecule-to-molecule, hydrophobic aggregation.

23 Q. Let's take a look at your testing of the various
24 formulations, Dr. Furfine. If we could go to 2223 in the first
25 instance, and I'm now on page 2. We looked at page 1 a moment

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 ago.

2 In the bottom of the page, which is shown here on the
3 left, what conditions are you studying in this test?

4 A. Yes. These are a classic subset of the accelerated
5 stability that we do. The agitation, which is essentially
6 vortexing that we discussed before, and the thermal stability.
7 So you incubate the tubes of drug formulation at elevated
8 temperatures.

9 Q. And let's take a look at some of the results of the
10 testing.

11 If we could go to 2224 and look at page 1. If we
12 could go down just a little more, Mr. Schliesske, and look at
13 the 45-degree data.

14 Can you explain what these data shown in PTX 2224
15 reflect?

16 A. Yes. As you can see, if you look at the yellow lines
17 on the bottom there, the formulations that contain a thermal
18 stabilizer, in this case it's sucrose, are doing pretty well.
19 They're not aggregating, and they're not coming out of
20 solution. But you see the number is higher in Formulation 5
21 that does not have the sucrose in; it only has the sodium
22 chloride in it. There's some other excipients but no thermal
23 stabilizer, and so the number is higher.

24 So when numbers go up higher, those are the results
25 of particles forming and light scattering, and the more light

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 scatters, the higher the number goes. So particle, light
2 scattering both go up, and that's how you know you're getting
3 precipitation and particle formation.

4 Q. Let's break that down just a little. The test you're
5 running at the top of it says OD 405. What is that?

6 A. That's the absorbance at 405. That's a measurement
7 of the scattering of the light in the solution. So when you
8 send a light beam through the solution, if you have particles,
9 it scatters them and then it doesn't make it through the
10 detector. And that's how you measure the 405.

11 Q. So in laymen's terms, are you measuring how clear or
12 how cloudy the solution is?

13 A. Essentially, yes.

14 Q. And the numbers at the bottom that you're showing
15 that are in yellow under 14 day 45 degrees, did I get it right
16 that the higher numbers are worse than the lower numbers?

17 A. Higher number is worse, like golf, as you say.

18 Q. Now, what did that teach you with respect to whether
19 you wanted to use a thermal stabilizer?

20 A. This was an indicator that, in fact, we needed a
21 thermal stabilizer. We needed something more than just the
22 salt that was in IVT-1.

23 Q. And let's now go to additional data in this test. If
24 we could go -- and we're still in 2224. On the left it says
25 VTX.

1 A. VTX is going -- it's an abbreviation for vortex. So
2 we're back to this agitation stress. And you can see the
3 times. We started with 30 minutes of vortexing, which was our
4 old way, and then we moved to up to see how much it could do.
5 And we went up the way up to two hours, 120 minutes, two hours
6 of vortexing. And you can see the numbers are not going up at
7 the OD 405.

8 Q. And just to be clear, did you have organic cosolvents
9 in these formulations?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. And so what did you think about these results?

12 A. These indicated that the more recent organic
13 cosolvent of polysorbate was going to be necessary and that it
14 was superior to the PEG. The PEG was in the IVT-1. We didn't
15 have polysorbate there.

16 Q. If we look at the next test or another test also on
17 page 1, there's something a little higher up.

18 We did that one already, I think, Mr. Schliesske. I
19 think this is 1.9.

20 There's something called F/T there. Can you explain
21 for the Court what that test is?

22 A. Yeah. F/T stands for freeze/thaw. So when you
23 manufacture a drug, there are lots of times when you have to
24 freeze it, usually in bulk, to store it until you're going to
25 fill it or modify it in some way to get it towards its final

1 form.

2 And so you may several times thaw the drug out to
3 transfer it into whatever its new manufacturing state is and
4 then refreeze it because maybe you don't use it all; you just
5 take part of it. And so you need to be able to make your drug
6 stable to freeze/thaw.

7 And polysorbate is actually pretty good at
8 stabilizing drugs to freeze/thaw. And as you can see here, it
9 did a nice job both through four or even eight freeze/thaws.

10 Q. In your testing, Dr. Furfine, out of all of these
11 formulations, which one performed best?

12 A. The 5 percent sucrose, .03 percent polysorbate. So
13 that's Number 2 there.

14 Q. What is this formulation called?

15 A. That formulation is now called Eylea.

16 Q. Did you also study the ability of your formulations
17 to withstand the shear stress of a narrow needle?

18 A. Yes, we did.

19 Q. And what did that testing show with respect to
20 whether your 40 milligram per milliliter formulations you
21 created was able to withstand shear stress of a 30-gauge
22 needle?

23 A. We required the polysorbate to withstand the shear
24 stress in addition to the agitation stress.

25 Q. Did the 40-milligram-per-milliliter formulations you

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 created with polysorbate withstand shear stress of a narrow
2 needle or did they fail?

3 A. They passed that test.

4 Q. If your 40-milligram-per-milliliter formulations had
5 not passed that test of getting through a 30-gauge needle,
6 would you have developed it for intravitreal formulation?

7 A. No, we would not have.

8 Q. Did you perform additional testing, Dr. Furfine, that
9 we haven't discussed or shown here?

10 A. Yes. There's a lot of testing needed before you can
11 move a drug into the clinic.

12 Q. Did you think those tests were important in terms of
13 determining whether you could have a successful
14 40-milligram-per-milliliter intravitreal formulation with
15 aflibercept?

16 A. We only do tests that we consider important.

17 Q. Let's bring your patent up.

18 THE COURT: You asked, Counsel.

19 MR. BERL: I deserved that. Sorry.

20 THE COURT: I tell you what, though, since I've
21 interrupted and my personal comfort schedule usual regimen was
22 disrupted earlier, let's take five and take a personal comfort
23 break and we can come back.

24 Doctor, we're going to take a few minutes. You're
25 not allowed to talk to anybody. They're not allowed to talk to

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 you. So don't mean to be discourteous.

2 THE WITNESS: Can I sit here?

3 THE COURT: You're welcome to, but you're free to not
4 aggregate as a particle.

5 See, I'm learning. How about that?

6 You do not have to remain there, Doctor. If you need
7 to use the restroom, whatever, feel free. But no one can talk
8 to you.

9 THE WITNESS: Thank you.

10 (A recess was taken from 4:16 p.m. to
11 4:23 p.m.)

12 THE COURT: Counsel, you may proceed, sir.

13 MR. BERL: Thank you, Your Honor.

14 BY MR. BERL:

15 Q. If we could put up PTX 2 again. That's your patent.

16 Dr. Furfine, what did you think you and your
17 coinventors had invented when you filed the patent application?

18 A. We thought we'd invented two things. One is Eylea,
19 the drug that's on the market now; and the second thing is a
20 set of principles and guidelines on how to formulate
21 aflibercept into an intravitreal formulation.

22 Q. As you look back on your career, Dr. Furfine, how
23 long have you worked as a scientist in the pharmaceutical
24 field?

25 A. Since 1989. I'm sorry. I can't do that math.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. In that time that you've been working in this field
2 since 1989, how does the invention described and claimed in
3 this product patent, the '865 patent, fit in?

4 A. This is something that I remain very proud of. I
5 guess maybe just to give a little context, you know, I've
6 always wanted to make medicines, and that's what kind of gets
7 me up in the morning, is knowing that everything we do in the
8 lab or in designing strategies for experiments is with the goal
9 of making a medicine that's going to make somebody feel better.
10 And that's what motivates me; it's what gets me excited about
11 going to work.

12 And to know that we actually created something here
13 that became a drug that transformed the way age-related wet AMD
14 is treated and -- it's like night and day, right? I mean,
15 these drugs are amazing. They stop people from going blind.
16 And to have contributed to that with my colleagues is something
17 I'm very proud of.

18 MR. BERL: Thank you very much, Dr. Furfine.

19 THE COURT: Cross?

20 MR. RAKOCZY: May I approach with some binders, Your
21 Honor?

22 THE COURT: You may.

23 MR. RAKOCZY: Good afternoon, Your Honor. William
24 Rakoczy for Mylan and Biocon. May I proceed?

25 THE COURT: You may. Sorry. Go ahead.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 CROSS-EXAMINATION

2 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

3 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Furfine.

4 A. Good afternoon.

5 Q. I represent Mylan and Biocon. I have just a few
6 questions for you.

7 Now, you testified quite a bit at the beginning of
8 your direct testimony about the aflibercept molecule, correct?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. Now, you don't purport to have invented the
11 aflibercept molecule, correct?

12 A. That's correct. It was before my time at Regeneron
13 that that molecule was invented.

14 Q. And your patent doesn't purport to invent the
15 molecule aflibercept, correct?

16 A. Correct.

17 Q. The patent is about a formulation of the aflibercept
18 molecule, correct?

19 A. Correct.

20 Q. So the molecule was known before your patent,
21 correct?

22 A. Yes, it was.

23 Q. Now, you talked a lot about aflibercept penetrating
24 the retina.

25 Do you recall that testimony?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. There are no studies or tests in your patent about
3 aflibercept and whether it will penetrate the retina or not,
4 correct?

5 A. That's correct.

6 Q. There are no PK studies on aflibercept of any kind in
7 your patent, correct?

8 A. That's correct.

9 Q. There are no tox studies on aflibercept in your
10 patent, right?

11 A. That's right.

12 Q. No rabbit studies, no monkey studies, correct?

13 A. That's correct.

14 Q. As a matter of fact, there's no human studies of any
15 kind on the formulations in your patent, correct?

16 A. That's correct.

17 Q. Your patent -- the only tests it has are you made
18 formulations, you put them on stability, and then you tested
19 them for native conformation and turbidity, correct?

20 A. That's correct.

21 Q. Now, you mentioned some skepticism about 40 mg/mL
22 concentration. Do you recall that?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Now, your patent doesn't contain any statements about
25 skepticism or insights about 40 mg/mL, correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 A. It doesn't contain anything about skepticism. That's
2 correct.

3 Q. As a matter of fact -- I'm sorry. I didn't mean to
4 interrupt.

5 A. There is data on 40 mg/mL in there, though, but no
6 statements of skepticism.

7 Q. Correct. Let me rephrase it. I'll make it clear.

8 Your patent doesn't say anything in there that
9 skilled persons didn't think you could make a 40 mg/mL
10 concentration formulation, correct?

11 A. Correct. It does not say you can't do that.

12 Q. In fact, your patent covers any concentration of
13 aflibercept, correct?

14 A. I don't know what -- whether the claims would be --
15 cover -- what the range of coverage is. That's kind of out of
16 my field.

17 Q. Let's pull up PTX 2. It's in your counsel's binder
18 he gave you.

19 If we could have PTX 2 on the screen, Claim 1,
20 please.

21 THE COURT: Do you have that, Doctor?

22 THE WITNESS: I do.

23 THE COURT: Okay. Go ahead, Counsel.

24 MR. RAKOCZY: Could we have Claim 1, please. If we
25 could blow up Claim 1, please. Thank you, Mr. Gibson.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

2 Q. You see this is Claim 1 of your '865 patent,
3 Dr. Furfine?

4 A. Yeah. Hang on just a minute here. Yep, go ahead.

5 Q. You see Claim 1 is directed to a vial that comprises,
6 and the first ingredient is a vascular endothelial growth
7 factor, VEGF antagonist, correct?

8 A. Correct.

9 Q. It doesn't specify any concentration there, right?

10 A. That's correct.

11 Q. So it could be below 40 mg, well above 40 mg. That
12 would cover any concentration of aflibercept, correct?

13 A. You're kind of getting into this space of legal
14 interpretation, I think, of claims, and that's out of my field.

15 Q. My question is simple. When it says "VEGF
16 antagonist," it doesn't specify a concentration, correct?

17 A. It's true that it does not specify a concentration.

18 Q. And if we look at the other ingredients, the buffer,
19 for example, it doesn't specify a buffer either, right?

20 A. It does not specify a buffer, correct.

21 Q. So that could be any buffer?

22 A. I don't think it could be any buffer, but in this
23 case it does not specify the buffer.

24 Q. And it doesn't specify the stabilizing agent either,
25 correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 A. It does not specify it in this specific claim, no.

2 Q. Let's talk about the formulation. And I want to
3 start with polysorbate 20, as you can imagine. That's a
4 nonionic surfactant, correct?

5 A. Correct.

6 Q. And in your formulation development work at
7 Regeneron, you and your colleagues described polysorbate 20 as
8 a stabilizer or stabilizing agent, correct?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Let's look at some of your formulation work. Let's
11 start at DTX 722. It's in your binder, and I'll also pull it
12 up on the screen for you.

13 A. This is your binder now?

14 Q. Yes, sir. My apologies.

15 So you have my binder, and then I'll always pull the
16 document up on the screen for you as well.

17 A. 722 you said?

18 Q. Yes, at page 1. I want to look at the first email.

19 A. Hang on a second. Okay.

20 Q. Look at the first email you see. It's from Amy
21 Galluccio to you, coinventor Kelly Frye and others, dated
22 November 8th, 2005, with an attachment entitled "Sucrose VGT
23 formulation help." Correct?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Now, I want to move to page 2 of this email, and

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 there's an attachment entitled "Product Composition." Do you
2 see that?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And below that we see a formulation, right?

5 A. Correct.

6 Q. And we see 10 millimolar phosphate, 40 millimolar
7 NaCl, 0.03 percent polysorbate 20, and 5 percent sucrose.

8 Is that the formulation?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. Now, I want to focus on --

11 A. The formulation is 40 mg/mL VEGF Trap too and pH .5,
12 but I assumed you were inferring that, but I just want to make
13 sure.

14 Q. Absolutely. And I want to go to the paragraph above
15 that and look at the first sentence. You see it says, "This is
16 an unstable formulation for VEGF Trap since there are minimal
17 excipients for intravitreal delivery and the formulation
18 contains a high concentration of VEGF Trap."

19 Do you see that?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And then it goes on to say that "The drug substance,
22 formulated drug substance, or drug product is held or stored at
23 25C and should be kept to a minimum during the manufacturing
24 process."

25 Do you see that?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And that "Temperatures above 25C must be avoided,"
3 right?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. And that it "should be held or stored at less than
6 minus 20C," correct?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. So this was an unstable formulation as of the date of
9 this email, November 8, 2005, correct?

10 A. I would have to look at this a little more closely to
11 make sure I understood the context at which this was being
12 stated.

13 Q. We can agree your formulation group attached this
14 product composition memo, and they said this is an unstable
15 formulation, correct?

16 A. I think that what you stated in the text is
17 absolutely correct, but I think there are -- stable to what?
18 And so you have to take it within the context, and I'd have to
19 think back to things that I don't have the information on here
20 as to what the situation was that we're talking about being
21 stable to, you know.

22 So it's possible that it could be stated as being
23 unstable in this situation, does not necessarily mean it's
24 unstable to become a marketed product and used in the clinic as
25 we want.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. We can at least agree that as of November 8, 2005,
2 this formulation, someone wrote, is unstable, correct? Can we
3 agree with that?

4 A. It is stated as such in the text, yes, absolutely.

5 Q. Now, let's look at the table on that same page, and
6 here we have the ingredients of the formulation. And we can
7 see that the solvent in this formulation is the WFI, or the
8 water for injection, correct?

9 A. That's correct.

10 Q. And that's used to dissolve the aflibercept, correct?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And the buffer is phosphate, correct?

13 A. Yes, it's a mixture of two different salt forms, but
14 yes.

15 Q. And then the sucrose is identified as a stabilizer,
16 correct?

17 A. Correct.

18 Q. And then the polysorbate 20 is identified as a
19 stabilizer as well, correct?

20 A. Yes, it is.

21 Q. It's not identified as a solvent, correct?

22 A. It is in this document not identified as a solvent.

23 Q. And polysorbate 20 is not used to dissolve
24 aflibercept, correct?

25 A. It is not used to dissolve aflibercept.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. And this document also does not identify
2 polysorbate 20 as a cosolvent, correct?

3 A. In this document it does not.

4 Q. And, in fact, in your development of the Eylea
5 formulation, you did not use polysorbate to remove or dissolve
6 aggregates, correct?

7 A. That's correct. We did not use it to remove or
8 dissolve aggregates.

9 Q. And it doesn't do that, right? Once there's an
10 aggregate in the formulation, you don't put polysorbate in
11 there to dissolve it, right?

12 A. That is typically correct, yes.

13 Q. Now, let's go to another one of the formulation
14 development memos. I believe even after 2005 we'll see
15 representations of polysorbate as a stabilizer.

16 So let's look at DTX 736 in your binder, and it's
17 also on screen. And you see this is an email dated April 21st,
18 2006, now, with attachments from coinventor Dr. Graham and
19 copied to you and coinventor Dr. Dix, correct?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. And if we go to page 3 of this exhibit, we see a memo
22 from coinventor Dr. Graham that he signed and actually dated
23 April 21, 2006, correct?

24 A. Yes, I see -- you said page --

25 Q. Page 3 of the exhibit. So it would be --

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 A. I have -- it's weird. It says page 1 of 1, 1 of 2, 2
2 of 2.

3 Q. I apologize. I'm referring to the exhibit number.
4 So DTX 736.0003.

5 THE COURT: The bottom right-hand corner in bold
6 typeface, Doctor.

7 THE WITNESS: Okay. Yeah, 0003. Got it now.

8 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

9 Q. So just for the record, on page 3 of DTX 736, we have
10 Dr. Graham signing and dating this memo, April 21, 2006,
11 correct?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. It's entitled "Revised pH for 40 mg/mL VEGF Trap for
14 ITV in a 0.03 percent polysorbate-containing formulation,"
15 correct?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. And the first sentence, obviously, identifies this as
18 a formulation of VEGF Trap for intravitreal delivery, correct?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And if we look at the formulation here, we can see a
21 formulation identified as 10 millimolar phosphate,
22 135 millimolar NaCl, 0.03 percent polysorbate 20, 40 mg/mL of
23 VEGF Trap pH 6.3, correct?

24 A. Correct.

25 Q. Now, I notice there's no sucrose stabilizer in this

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 formulation, correct?

2 A. That's correct.

3 Q. So let's look at the table below that and let's see
4 what folks said about these ingredients. And, again, water is
5 the solvent, correct?

6 A. Yes, it is.

7 Q. That's what's dissolving the aflibercept in this
8 formulation, correct?

9 A. It's not dissolving the aflibercept because the
10 aflibercept is already in a solution prior to adding the WFI.

11 Q. So aflibercept is already in solution. Then you add
12 the water?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. And then we have the other ingredients. We see the
15 phosphate buffer again, correct?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. We have the NaCl, salt, correct?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. We have no sucrose stabilizer this time, right?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. So this formulation as of April 2006 does not have
22 the sucrose stabilizer, right?

23 A. This specific memo quotes a formulation that does not
24 have the sucrose in it, correct.

25 Q. And this memo identifies the function of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 polysorbate 20 as stabilizer, correct?

2 A. Yes, it does.

3 Q. It doesn't say solvent; it doesn't say cosolvent.

4 Correct?

5 A. It does not say solvent or cosolvent.

6 Q. All right. Now, let's jump back to the formulation
7 on DTX 722, if we could very quickly.

8 THE COURT: That's on page 2, Counsel?

9 MR. RAKOCZY: Yes. And, Your Honor, I apologize.

10 THE WITNESS: This is .0002? Is that the right one?

11 MR. RAKOCZY: Yes.

12 Your Honor, I neglected to move to admit DTX 722 into
13 evidence.

14 THE COURT: Any objection?

15 MR. BERL: No objection, Your Honor.

16 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

17 (DTX 722 was admitted.)

18 MR. RAKOCZY: And I also neglected to move to admit
19 DTX 736 as well, please.

20 THE COURT: Any objection to 736?

21 MR. BERL: No objection.

22 THE COURT: Without objection, DTX 736 is hereby
23 admitted.

24 (DTX 736 was admitted.)

25

1 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

2 Q. Now, this formulation does have the 5 percent
3 sucrose, correct?

4 A. Yes, it does.

5 Q. So this is similar to the Eylea formulation, right?

6 A. Yes, it is.

7 Q. So let's take a look at that. I'd like to go to
8 PTX 1519, pull it up on screen for you.

9 A. Is this now back in my --

10 Q. This is in the same binder I gave you.

11 A. I thought you said -- there are Ps here. Sorry.

12 Q. There should be PTX 1519 in the binder I gave you.

13 A. I got it now.

14 Q. Or my colleague. I apologize.

15 A. I got it now.

16 Q. And this is the drug product section from the Eylea
17 BLA, and I'd like to focus on components of Eylea, which are on
18 page 5 of PTX 1519.

19 A. This is your 1519.0005?

20 Q. Yes, sir.

21 A. Okay.

22 Q. We can see on screen we have a Table 1.

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. And you see it is entitled "Nominal Composition of
25 VEGF Trap-Eye DP Formulation," correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. Yes, it is.

2 Q. And this identifies the ingredients of Eylea and the
3 functions, correct?

4 A. Yes, it identifies the ingredients and the functions.

5 Q. So we have aflibercept, the active ingredient,
6 correct?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. We see the buffering agents, the phosphate again,
9 correct?

10 A. Correct.

11 Q. We see the sucrose stabilizing agent, correct?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And the BLA then identifies polysorbate 20 as
14 stabilizing agent, correct?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. It does not say solvent or cosolvent, correct?

17 A. It does not.

18 Q. And you know what a BLA is, don't you?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. So a BLA, they're supposed to be truthful and
21 accurate, correct?

22 A. They must be truthful and accurate, yes.

23 Q. Because you're making representations to the FDA to
24 seek approval for your drug, correct?

25 A. That's correct.

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 Q. So in this BLA identifies the ingredients and the
2 function. It represents to the FDA the polysorbate 20
3 functions as a stabilizing agent, correct?

4 A. Yes, it does.

5 Q. Now, let's look at the same exhibit, page 5. I'm
6 sorry. Let's go to the same exhibit, page 6, sir. My
7 apologies.

8 Here we have another table and this one is Table 2
9 from the BLA, and it says, "Role of Excipients in the VEGF
10 Trap-Eye Formulation," correct?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And the role of polysorbate 20 here is identified
13 again as "stabilizing agent," correct?

14 A. Correct.

15 Q. Not solvent?

16 A. Correct.

17 Q. Not cosolvent?

18 A. Correct.

19 Q. And it goes on to provide additional description. Do
20 you see there it says for polysorbate 20, "The addition of
21 polysorbate 20 reduces the rate of aggregation and
22 precipitation when the protein is handled and agitated as a
23 liquid," correct?

24 A. Correct.

25 Q. And you agree with that, correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 A. I do.

2 Q. Now, it says "reduces the rate of aggregation and
3 precipitation." I think we just established polysorbate 20, it
4 doesn't dissolve aflibercept, right?

5 A. That's correct.

6 Q. And it doesn't dissolve or get rid of aggregates,
7 correct?

8 A. That's correct.

9 Q. And just to be clear, there are no solvents
10 identified in this formulation to the FDA other than water for
11 injection, correct?

12 A. That's correct.

13 Q. All right. I'd like to talk a little bit about some
14 of the information that you were tracking from your competitors
15 like Genentech.

16 Do you recall testifying about that?

17 A. I do.

18 Q. Let's look at a couple documents. Let's pull up the
19 first one, DTX 710.

20 MR. RAKOCZY: I apologize, Your Honor. I need
21 someone to pass me some notes.

22 Move to admit PTX 1519, Your Honor.

23 THE COURT: Any objection to 1519?

24 MR. BERL: No objection.

25 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 (PTX 1519 was admitted.)

2 MR. RAKOCZY: Let the record reflect Mr. Salmen did
3 not hand me the note he was supposed to hand me.

4 THE COURT: You may now ask for notes, Counsel, and I
5 suspect you shall receive.

6 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

7 Q. All right. Apologize, Dr. Furfine. So we have
8 DTX 710. Are you with me?

9 A. I am.

10 Q. On page 1 you see this is an email from Jesse
11 Cedarbaum, dated March 1, 2004, to you and others including
12 cofounder Dr. Yancopoulos, correct?

13 A. Correct.

14 Q. Here Mr. Cedarbaum is circulating an abstract that
15 Genentech had published for Lucentis, correct?

16 A. Let's see. Just give me a second to read it.

17 Q. Absolutely.

18 A. Yes, it is a pharmacokinetic study for ranibizumab.

19 Q. Yes. The abstract title was "Pharmacokinetic Study
20 of Ranibizumab (Lucentis) Following Subconjunctival" --

21 A. Conjunctival, yes.

22 Q. -- "Intracameral and Intravitreal Administration in
23 Rabbits."

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. So this is consistent with your testimony you were

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 following Genentech and what they were doing with intravitreal
2 delivery of that molecule, correct?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. This is March 2004. Let's look at January 2005 and
5 see what else you got your hands on.

6 MR. RAKOCZY: That time, I did get a note.

7 THE COURT: Noted for the record.

8 Good job, Counsel.

9 MR. RAKOCZY: Move to admit DTX 710, Your Honor.

10 MR. BERL: No objection.

11 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

12 (DTX 710 was admitted.)

13 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

14 Q. Dr. Furfine, on screen should be DTX 714.

15 A. 714. Yes.

16 Q. This is an email dated January 27, 2005, to you and
17 others at Regeneron, again including cofounder Dr. Yancopoulos,
18 correct?

19 A. Yes, it is.

20 Q. And the subject is "Lucentis ITV PK," correct?

21 A. Correct. Yes.

22 Q. And if we go to page 2 of the document, this email
23 was forwarding the Gaudreault paper entitled "Preclinical
24 Pharmacokinetics of Ranibizumab (rhuFabV2) After a Single
25 Intravitreal Administration." Correct?

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And this is the Gaudreault paper you mentioned
3 earlier, right?

4 A. Yes, it is.

5 MR. RAKOCZY: And, Your Honor, we will get you and
6 Madam Court Reporter a list of all of these terms. I realize
7 we're ripping them off pretty quickly.

8 THE COURT: Much appreciated.

9 MR. RAKOCZY: Move to admit DTX 714, Your Honor.

10 MR. BERL: No objection.

11 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

12 (DTX 714 was admitted.)

13 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

14 Q. Now, in this paper, in addition to the part you cited
15 or testified about, you also got your hands on the actual
16 formulation of ranibizumab in this paper, correct?

17 A. I believe it is in here somewhere, though I don't
18 remember exactly where right this second.

19 Q. Let's go to page 3 of DTX 714, left-hand column below
20 the table, the fourth line.

21 A. Got it, yep.

22 Q. Here we see that ranibizumab was "formulated as 10
23 millimolar sodium succinate, 10 percent trehalose,
24 and 0.5 [sic] percent Tween 20 (pH 5)," correct?

25 A. Correct.

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 Q. I'll read it again. I apologize.

2 Again, we're in DTX 714 on page 3. And here we see
3 that ranibizumab "was formulated as 10 millimolar sodium
4 succinate, 10 percent trehalose, and 0.05 percent Tween 20
5 (pH 5)," correct?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And Tween 20 is another name for polysorbate 20,
8 correct?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. And trehalose here is the stabilizer, correct?

11 A. Trehalose is known as a stabilizing agent. It can be
12 used that way. Because I did not develop this formulation and
13 were not aware of the testing they did, I can't say for sure
14 that that's what it was used for here.

15 Q. So you wouldn't know what the function of that
16 ingredient is unless you actually had test data on it, correct?

17 A. That's correct.

18 Q. And sodium succinate, would it be the same answer?
19 That might be a buffer, but you would actually have to see
20 testing data to know. Am I right?

21 A. I don't know for a buffer -- I guess in a perfect
22 world, yes, you would want a pH test done.

23 Q. Now, same answer for the Tween 20, the 0.05 percent.
24 You would need to see test data to know exactly how that was
25 behaving and how it was functioning in the formulation,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 correct?

2 A. You would, though these would be relatively easy
3 tests to perform.

4 Q. Okay. That's fair. But you would want to do that
5 test to know what it was doing, correct?

6 A. I think it's slightly different than that. If you
7 don't mind my -- so science is done a little bit differently
8 than that. Basically, you have a challenge that you're trying
9 to solve, and you add things to try and solve those problems.

10 And so it's really kind of -- you're kind of putting
11 the cart before the horse a little bit in the way you're
12 describing it. So, really, like, you decide what you want to
13 test because you're trying to solve a problem. Then you run
14 that test.

15 Q. My question is much simpler. We're looking at a
16 formulation of ranibizumab. You don't have any data on it. To
17 know the functions of those ingredients, you would want to see
18 test data on them, correct?

19 A. I would.

20 Q. Okay. And this article is what ran the PK study
21 on -- can you pronounce it for me? Is it cynomolgus monkeys?

22 A. Cynomolgus monkeys, correct. You pronounced it
23 correctly.

24 Q. Now, this publication, would it advance the skilled
25 person's knowledge, at least to some degree, regarding the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 tolerability of polysorbate in an intravitreal injection?

2 Correct?

3 A. It would have advanced the knowledge and would have
4 actually been potentially concerning, given their information
5 results.

6 Q. We'll get to that. But my question is it would have
7 advanced the skilled person's knowledge at least to some
8 degree?

9 A. That's correct.

10 Q. Now, in fact, Genentech here had beat you to the
11 punch, right, in measuring or attempting to evaluate
12 tolerability of polysorbate in a formulation? Is that right?

13 A. I don't know that we were in a race with Genentech to
14 test polysorbate. That wasn't really a competition that was
15 going on. So I would say no to that.

16 Q. Well, you were tracking Genentech's work, at least.
17 That's fair, right?

18 A. We were.

19 Q. Now, Genentech was proposing to use five times the
20 amount of polysorbate 20 in this formulation than you were
21 proposing at around this time; is that right?

22 A. I think we tested .1 to .03; so this is not five
23 times those.

24 Q. At the time of this article, isn't it true that you
25 were proposing to limit the amount of polysorbate 20 in the

1 formulation to 0.01 percent?

2 A. Oh, yeah. That's a function of a manufacturing
3 process where we had to add a little bit to stabilize it to the
4 stringencies that happened during manufacturing.

5 And the idea there was that, if we didn't want
6 polysorbate in there, we would have to be able to state what
7 the minimum that was in there was.

8 So we were first making formulations that didn't have
9 polysorbate. As you saw, IVT-1 did not have polysorbate in it.
10 But, in fact, it had a small amount because that got carried
11 through in the manufacturing.

12 So that's what that was about. We didn't go with
13 polysorbate until later when we required it because it worked
14 better than PEG.

15 Q. Let's take a look at DTX 711. And I want to look at
16 the first email on the page.

17 You see this is an email dated December 8, 2004,
18 around the same time as you received that Gaudreault paper.
19 And this is from named coinventor Dr. Graham on the subject of
20 "Specification for intravitreal VEGF Trap," correct?

21 A. Yes.

22 MR. RAKOCZY: Move to admit DTX 711, Your Honor.

23 THE COURT: Any objection?

24 MR. BERL: No objection.

25 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 (DTX 711 was admitted.)

2 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

3 Q. All I want to do is confirm here lower in the email
4 at the end of the second -- or the last paragraph, you see here
5 that Dr. Graham is proposing a limit for the polysorbate as not
6 to exceed 0.01 percent in the specification, correct?

7 A. Yes, that's what it states.

8 Q. So the ranibizumab formulation you saw in Gaudreault
9 was using five times that amount of polysorbate 20, correct?

10 A. Yes, it was five times the amount -- well, five times
11 the maximum amount that could have been in the solution, yes.

12 Q. Correct. Thank you.

13 So in April 2005 I believe you received information
14 on Genentech's Avastin formulation.

15 Do you recall that?

16 A. Not off the top of my head, but --

17 Q. Let's take a look. DTX 714 on screen. It's also in
18 your binder.

19 A. So this is still the -- the Gaudreault paper is 14.

20 Q. I'm sorry. DTX 716. My apologies.

21 Do you see this?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. This is an email dated April 12, 2005, from you to
24 your coinventors, Dr. Dix and Dr. Graham, correct?

25 A. Correct, yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. And the subject is "Avastin EMEA discussion,"
2 correct?

3 A. Correct.

4 Q. Now, Avastin was the name of Genentech's bevacizumab;
5 isn't that right?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Now, if we look at who forwarded this, you see
8 there's a forward from the CEO, Leonard Schleifer, correct?

9 A. Yes, that's correct.

10 Q. And you see he says, "This is single-most
11 comprehensive discussion of Avastin all in one place. The
12 European approval discussion document!" Correct?

13 A. That's what it says.

14 Q. Now, you then forwarded this to your formulation
15 team?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. Dr. Dix, Dr. Graham, and Kelly Frye. And you
18 instructed them to take a close look at the protein
19 characterization, manufacturing, and stability part of this
20 document, correct?

21 A. Yes, I did.

22 Q. And you pointed out that there may be some other
23 things Regeneron should consider based on what Genentech had
24 done, correct?

25 A. Correct.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 Q. Now, the attachment, the EMEA report, actually
2 discloses the Avastin formulation, correct?

3 A. Yes, it must. I haven't read it in a long time;
4 so --

5 Q. Let's --

6 A. -- I'll trust you on that.

7 Q. Let's go to page 9 of DTX 716, under the drug product
8 section. Do you see that?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And if we go to lines 4 to 5, you see the bevacizumab
11 or the Avastin formulation there, correct?

12 A. Yes. 10 mg/mL.

13 Q. It's a formulation containing 51 millimolar sodium
14 phosphate, 60 mg/mL trehalose dihydrate, and 0.04 percent
15 polysorbate 20, correct?

16 A. Maybe I'm looking at a different one. I'm sorry.
17 Say it again just to make sure I'm in the right place.

18 Q. It's highlighted on screen as well; so...

19 A. I'm sorry. I was looking at the one above that.
20 Yeah. Okay. 51 millimolar.

21 Q. The Avastin formulation had phosphate --

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. -- trehalose, and 0.0 [sic] percent polysorbate 20?

24 A. Correct.

25 Q. So four times the amount of polysorbate that your

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 specification topped out at, correct?

2 A. Correct, though this is for cancer treatment,
3 systemic exposure, not eye.

4 Q. Now, you understand this formulation was used in the
5 eye, though, correct?

6 A. At later points in time, there were people who
7 administered off-label -- unapproved, off-label -- bevacizumab
8 to the eye, yes.

9 Q. A lot of off-label use, right?

10 A. A lot, yes.

11 Q. Now, I want to ask you about this formulation and the
12 functions, and I don't need to spend a lot of time on it. I
13 just want to confirm your answer would be the same.

14 Looking at the formulation, you don't know the
15 function of those ingredients unless you had test data on it,
16 correct?

17 A. I wouldn't know for sure. I could suspect, but I
18 wouldn't know for sure.

19 Q. Now, let's look at page 4 of this document, DTX 716.

20 MR. RAKOCZY: And I apologize if I neglected to move
21 to admit -- move to admit DTX 716.

22 THE COURT: Any objection?

23 MR. BERL: No objection.

24 THE COURT: Without objection, motion, in note form,
25 granted.

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 MR. BERL: I have no objection to him just doing it
2 at the end too.

3 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

4 Q. All right. If we look under the introduction, I want
5 to look at the size --

6 A. Which tab are we on now?

7 Q. So we are on the same exhibit.

8 A. Okay.

9 Q. DTX 716 at page 4.

10 A. Oh, page 4.

11 Q. It's the first two lines right under the
12 introduction.

13 And Avastin is a big molecule, isn't it?

14 A. It has a molecular weight of 150,000, like most
15 antibodies, yes.

16 Q. It's bigger than aflibercept, correct?

17 A. Depends how you want to measure it. If you measure
18 it in absolute molecular weight, yes, it's a little bit bigger.
19 If you measure it kind of like we talked about before and its
20 function, it's more similar in size.

21 Q. We want to look at kilodaltons, at kDa's.
22 Aflibercept is, I think, 115 you mentioned?

23 A. That's correct.

24 Q. And bevacizumab, or Avastin, is 149 kilodaltons,
25 correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. That's correct.

2 Q. So bigger. And used in the eye successfully,
3 correct?

4 A. It has at later points, than I think when this
5 document came out, been used in the eye successfully.

6 Q. Now, let's look at -- I want to go back to your
7 instructions to your team in the email. You told them to take
8 a close look at the stability part of the document?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And let's go to the stability part of the Avastin
11 report, which I believe is page 10 of DTX 716. And if we look
12 at the third-to-last line --

13 A. Third-to-last line.

14 Q. -- we can see that the Avastin report concluded that
15 "The submitted stability data support the proposed shelf life
16 of 24 months when stored at 5 degrees C plus or minus
17 3 degrees C," correct?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. So this formulation containing the trehalose, the
20 polysorbate 20, and the buffer was stable for 24 months at
21 5 degrees C, correct?

22 A. Yes, it was.

23 Q. Now, the EMEA discussion document for Avastin was not
24 the last information that you obtained on Genentech's Avastin,
25 correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 A. No, I doubt it. I don't remember everything I
2 received, you know, 20 years ago on this topic, but probably
3 not.

4 Q. Let's look at DTX 718.

5 A. Okay.

6 Q. And this is an email from Kelly Frye on your team to
7 you and others dated April 18, 2005, with the subject line
8 "Avastin and Macugen formulations," correct?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And if you look at the bottom half of the email, she
11 provides the formulation for Avastin?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Apologize. We need to go down further in the email.
14 There it is.

15 A. I see it.

16 Q. And so we see the Avastin formulation again -- the
17 phosphate, the trehalose, and the polysorbate 20, correct?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And then the Macugen formulation there as well,
20 correct?

21 A. Correct.

22 Q. And below that she says, "Both of these formulations
23 would be iso-osmolar," correct?

24 A. Yes, she says that.

25 Q. That's the same thing as isotonic, correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. Yeah, they're synonymous.

2 Q. So the Avastin formulation, even though it was for
3 cancer at 10 millimolar phosphate, 6 percent trehalose, and
4 0.04 percent polysorbate 20, was isotonic, correct?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Now, by July of 2005 it was also known that Avastin,
7 or bevacizumab, a much larger molecule than aflibercept, had
8 actually been used in the eye, correct?

9 A. So, first of all, it's not a much larger molecule.
10 It's actually functionally about the same. So I would disagree
11 with that assessment.

12 And I don't know when the Avastin was started to be
13 used off-label in people's eyes instead of ranibizumab. I
14 don't remember when that started. I started tracking it more
15 when it was after the ranibizumab approval, so after Lucentis
16 was approved, when it became an issue and more in the news
17 because Genentech was not happy about it.

18 Q. We'll take a look.

19 MR. RAKOCZY: Before we do, move to admit DTX 718,
20 Your Honor.

21 MR. BERL: No objection.

22 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

23 (DTX 718 was admitted.)

24 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

25 Q. Let's pull up DTX 3058 on Avastin.

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 A. Sorry. Say the number again.

2 Q. DTX 3058. And you see this is a paper dated
3 July-August 2005 entitled "Optical Coherence Tomography
4 Findings After an Intravitreal Injection."

5 Do you see that?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Does this refresh your recollection that Avastin, or
8 bevacizumab, had been used by intravitreal injection?

9 A. Yes. This is a publication on the topic, yes.

10 Q. So by July or the summer of 2005, someone had used
11 bevacizumab, or Avastin, off-label in the eye, correct?

12 A. That's correct, yes.

13 Q. All right. I want to talk briefly about this ITV-1
14 formulation, the PEG formulation.

15 Do you recall that?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. And just to clear up, some of the documents say ITV
18 and some say IVT. Can I assume that's the same thing?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Okay. So the IVT-1 was the PEG formulation, and that
21 was the first one that you put into the clinic at Regeneron,
22 correct?

23 A. That's correct.

24 Q. And so that did not use polysorbate, correct?

25 A. That's correct. That did not use polysorbate.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 Q. Let's pull up DTX 719 and look at page 1.

2 And you see this is a memo. It's copied to you,
3 dated August 16th, 2005, from --

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. It's from coinventors Dr. Dix and Kelly Frye,
6 correct?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. And the subject is "VEGF Trap intravitreal
9 formulation storage and shipping conditions," correct?

10 A. Yes.

11 MR. RAKOCZY: Move to admit DTX 719, Your Honor.

12 MR. BERL: No objection.

13 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

14 (DTX 719 was admitted.)

15 MR. RAKOCZY: I apologize. Also move to admit
16 DTX-3058.

17 THE COURT: Any objection to 3058?

18 MR. BERL: No objection.

19 THE COURT: Without objection, that is also admitted.

20 (DTX 3058 was admitted.)

21 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

22 Q. Let's look at the formulation identified on DTX 719.

23 And we can see this is a 10-millimolar sodium phosphate,

24 135-millimolar sodium chloride, and 0.1 percent PEG 350,

25 correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. Yes, that's correct.

2 Q. Now, I think you mentioned that this formulation, in
3 your view, was somehow inferior, but this is the one that was
4 actually moved into the clinic first in Phase I and Phase II
5 trials, correct?

6 A. It was moved into the clinic first, but we didn't
7 know, when we moved it into the clinic, that it was inferior.

8 Q. But it was actually used in Phase I and Phase II
9 clinical trials, correct?

10 A. Yes, it was.

11 Q. I'd like to look at another study on this IVT-1 PEG
12 formulation, and it's at DTX 723.

13 A. Organic cosolvent. Got it.

14 Q. This is a memo from Laura Pologe copying you --

15 A. Pologe, yes.

16 Q. I apologize.

17 This is a memo from Laura Pologe copying you to
18 coinventors Dr. Graham and Dr. Dix, dated March 10, 2006,
19 entitled "Syringe compatibility of 10 mg/mL and 40 mg/mL VEGF
20 Trap," correct?

21 A. Correct.

22 Q. And this study actually tested the PEG formulations,
23 correct?

24 A. Give me a second to look. Yes, it appears to be the
25 PEG.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. If we look at the first paragraph, last two lines on
2 page 1 of this exhibit, we see the formulation. 0.1 percent
3 PEG, correct?

4 A. Correct.

5 Q. And so this test was using the same amount of PEG,
6 0.1 percent, but testing it in 10 mg/mL and 40 mg/mL, correct?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. So you don't have to add more PEG to dissolve
9 aflibercept or the other ingredients in here, correct?

10 A. When we make a formulation, the aflibercept is
11 already in solution; so we don't use the PEG to dissolve it.

12 Q. Thank you, sir.

13 MR. RAKOCZY: Move to admit DTX 723, Your Honor.

14 THE COURT: Any objection?

15 MR. BERL: No objection.

16 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

17 (DTX 723 was admitted.)

18 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

19 Q. Now I'd like to move on to the polysorbate
20 formulation, or, I believe, IVT-2, correct?

21 A. Hang on a second. Say which one you are again.

22 Q. The IVT-2 formulation was the polysorbate
23 formulation.

24 A. Yeah, but which page are you on?

25 Q. Oh, I'm moving to a new exhibit now.

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 A. Okay. Can you just restate the number?

2 Q. I just had a quick question to confirm. IVT-2, that
3 denoted the polysorbate formulation without PEG?

4 A. Sorry. Yes. Correct.

5 Q. Okay. So let's go to DTX 725. And this is an email
6 you're copied on from coinventor Dr. Graham?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Dated May 8, 2006, with the subject "VEGF Trap
9 formulations for ITV," correct?

10 A. Yes, correct.

11 Q. And in the email below on this page, you are asking
12 Dr. Graham to provide the formulations moving into the tox
13 study, correct?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And this email is dated May 8, 2006, correct?

16 A. Yes, correct.

17 Q. And let's look at the formulations above that very
18 quickly. We see that he sent along a lead formulation and a
19 backup formulation, correct?

20 A. Correct.

21 Q. And the lead formulation had phosphate, NaCl,
22 polysorbate 20, and 5 percent sucrose, and 5 to 40 mg/mL VEGF
23 Trap, correct?

24 A. Correct.

25 Q. And the backup formulation had phosphate, NaCl,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 polysorbate 20, and also 5 to 40 mg/mL VEGF Trap, correct?

2 A. Correct.

3 Q. Now, this email does not contain any tox data,
4 correct?

5 A. It says we're going to use it in a tox study, but it
6 does not show the data from that study, correct.

7 Q. So you didn't have that tox data yet. You were
8 moving these into the study, correct?

9 A. That's correct.

10 Q. And this email does not provide any stability data on
11 these formulations either, correct?

12 A. It does not, no.

13 Q. And you agree that the purpose or the role of the
14 0.03 percent polysorbate in this lead formulation and the
15 backup formulation was as an agitation stabilizer, correct?

16 A. It does serve that purpose, yes.

17 MR. RAKOCZY: Move to admit DTX 725, Your Honor.

18 MR. BERL: No objection.

19 THE COURT: Without objection, 725 admitted.

20 (DTX 725 was admitted.)

21 Counsel, may I inquire? Where are we in the grand
22 scheme of things?

23 MR. RAKOCZY: Your Honor, I'm terrible at time, but I
24 may have a decent amount. If you want me to break, I'm happy
25 to break.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 THE COURT: Are we at a good spot in that to do so?

2 MR. RAKOCZY: Yes, we are. We're moving to a new
3 module.

4 THE COURT: Why don't we do that then, given the
5 hour.

6 MR. RAKOCZY: Did I move to admit DTX 725? I did,
7 right?

8 THE COURT: Yes. Based on affirmative head nod from
9 Madam Clerk, yes.

10 MR. RAKOCZY: Thank you.

11 THE COURT: Doctor, this may come as good or bad news
12 to you. In the back of the room to the right, just you and I
13 hear that. You're midstream on your testimony. So my
14 admonition about being a man without a country applies to you
15 this evening as well. So have dinner on your own and perhaps
16 decompress a little bit. But formally, for the record again,
17 because you are midstream, so to speak, on your testimony,
18 you're not permitted to interact with anyone. They're not
19 allowed to talk to you, vice versa. So I'll offer that as
20 protection for you or an excuse as to why folks may run from
21 you during this evening.

22 But you're free to step down, sir. Go right ahead.
23 You can leave those materials right there.

24 THE WITNESS: Thank you.

25 THE COURT: No, thank you. And have a pleasant

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 evening in solitude.

2 THE WITNESS: Still okay to, like, get a ride back to
3 the hotel?

4 THE COURT: I will give you special dispensation.
5 Someone will give you a ride. Turn the radio up really loud.

6 Good question, though, Doctor. Good question. You
7 don't have to stay in the courthouse. That's reserved for
8 other people.

9 We'll pick up with the doctor's testimony tomorrow
10 morning at 9:30, unless there's anything else we need to take
11 up at this point.

12 MR. RAKOCZY: Nothing from Mylan.

13 MR. BERL: Nothing from us.

14 THE COURT: Any additional exhibits plaintiffs expect
15 to seek to introduce for Dr. Furfine?

16 MR. BERL: We have a list from what happened on
17 direct. I can just do that at the end of the redirect.

18 THE COURT: That's fine. Just make sure that's kept
19 in updated condition, and we'll do that.

20 MR. RAKOCZY: That's fine with us, Your Honor.

21 THE COURT: Great.

22 With that, everyone have a pleasant evening, and
23 we'll resume tomorrow morning. Thank you all very much.

24 (Proceedings concluded at 5:16 p.m.)

25

CERTIFICATE

1
2 I, Cindy L. Knecht, Registered Professional Reporter and
3 Official Reporter of the United States District Court for the
4 Northern District of West Virginia, do hereby certify that the
5 foregoing is a true and correct transcript of the proceedings
6 had in the above-styled action on June 13, 2023, as reported by
7 me in stenotypy.

8 I certify that the transcript fees and format comply with
9 those prescribed by the Court and the Judicial Conference of
10 the United States.

11 Given under my hand this 13th day of June 2023.

12 /s/Cindy L. Knecht

13 _____
14 Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR
15 Official reporter, United States
16 District Court for the Northern
17 District of West Virginia
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
NORTHERN DISTRICT OF WEST VIRGINIA

Regeneron Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

Plaintiff,

VS.

CIVIL ACTION NO.

1:22-cv-61

Mylan Pharmaceuticals, Inc., and

Volume 3

Biocon Biologics,

Defendants.

- - -

Proceedings had in the bench trial of the above-styled action on June 14, 2023, before Honorable Thomas S. Klee District Judge, at Clarksburg, West Virginia.

- - -

APPEARANCES:

On behalf of the Plaintiff:

David I. Berl
Arthur J. Argall, III
Andrew V. Trask
Williams & Connolly, LLP
680 Maine Avenue, SW
Washington, D.C. 20024
202.434.5000

APPEARANCES CONTINUED ON NEXT PAGE

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 On behalf of the Plaintiff, continued:

2 Steven Robert Ruby
3 Carey, Douglas, Kessler & Ruby, PLLC
4 797 Virginia Street, East, Suite 901
5 Charleston, WV 25301
6 304.345.1234

7 Petra Scamborova
8 Regeneron Pharmaceuticals, Inc.
9 777 Old Saw Mill River Road
10 Tarrytown, NY 10591-6717
11 914.847.7611

12 On behalf of the Defendant:

13 Deanne M. Mazzochi
14 William A. Rakoczy
15 Heinz J. Salmen
16 Eric R. Hunt
17 Lauren M. Lesko
18 Neil B. McLaughlin
19 Rakoczy, Molino, Mazzochi & Siwik, LLP
20 6 W. Hubbard Street, Suite 500
21 Chicago, IL 60654
22 312.527.2157

23 Gordon H. Copland
24 William J. O'Brien
25 Steptoe & Johnson
400 White Oaks Blvd.
Bridgeport, WV 26330
304.933.8162

Proceedings recorded utilizing realtime translation.
Transcript produced by computer-aided transcription.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Wednesday Morning Session,
2 June 14, 2023, 9:30 a.m.

3 - - -

4 THE COURT: We all reconvene for day three of trial.
5 Happy Flag Day to everyone.

6 A couple things to start with. I will remind
7 everyone, counsel and spectators, local rule 85.01 of the
8 Northern District of West Virginia absolutely prohibits any
9 recording or photographs of the courtroom or in the areas
10 immediately adjacent to the courtroom. There was a report
11 yesterday that there had been photographs being taken. If that
12 gets confirmed, if that happens again, violators will be dealt
13 with accordingly. But everyone is hereby reminded of that
14 local rule as an FYI.

15 I'm aware there's been a flurry of filings this
16 morning. Regeneron's motion to exclude. And there was also a
17 letter emailed to Ms. Marcum this morning on Steptoe & Johnson
18 letterhead. The Court will order that filed and made part of
19 the record as well. We have not had a chance to read that; so
20 we'll take that up after we do.

21 If we're ready to resume with our current pending
22 witness, we can proceed.

23 Yes, Doctor, there you are. I'm sorry. Good
24 morning, sir. Go ahead and resume the stand. I'll remind you
25 you remain under oath. Good morning. I hope you enjoyed your

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 evening of solitude.

2 THE WITNESS: I did.

3 THE COURT: Good.

4 (Witness resumes stand.)

5 THE COURT: You're welcome.

6 Counsel, go right ahead.

7 MR. RAKOCZY: Good morning, Your Honor. William
8 Rakoczy for Mylan and Biocon.

9 CROSS-EXAMINATION

10 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

11 Q. Good morning, Dr. Furfine.

12 A. Good morning.

13 Q. Let's jump back to your '865 patent, if we could, go
14 over just a few items. It is PTX 2 in your binder. If we
15 could go to page 7, please.

16 Go to the beginning of the examples. I believe if
17 you start on page 7, Dr. Furfine, you'll see that your patent
18 has eight examples. Do you see that?

19 A. I see the examples list.

20 Q. And if you look through the next couple pages, you'll
21 see it runs through eight total examples, correct?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. Now, let's look at Examples 1 and 2 quickly, please,
24 on page 7. And you see both of those examples are directed to
25 a formulation containing 50 mg/mL VEGF Trap, correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. Correct.

2 Q. So those examples would not be covered by a claim
3 that required 40 mg/mL of VEGF Trap, correct?

4 A. I don't think I'm qualified to decide what claims
5 cover what.

6 Q. You agree 50 is different from 40 mg/mL, right?

7 A. I would indeed.

8 Q. Now, if you could quickly look at Examples 7 and 8 on
9 page 9 of the exhibit, and you see both of those examples are
10 directed to 20 mg/mL VEGF Trap, correct?

11 A. Correct.

12 Q. So, obviously, not 40 mg/mL VEGF Trap, correct?

13 A. Correct.

14 Q. And if you look at Examples 4 and 6, do you see those
15 are liquid formulations in a refilled syringe, not a vial,
16 correct?

17 A. Correct.

18 Q. Now, Examples 5, 6, and 8, can you confirm for me
19 those do not contain a sugar stabilizer? Is that right?

20 A. 5. What were the other ones?

21 Q. Excuse me. 5, 6, and 8 do not contain a sugar
22 stabilizer; is that correct?

23 A. Correct.

24 Q. Now, you did not invent any new or novel excipients
25 in your '865 patent, correct?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. No, there were not novel excipients.

2 Q. The excipients used in your patent were known and
3 available before the patent, correct?

4 A. Yes, that's correct.

5 Q. Can we look at Example 3, please, on page 9. And you
6 see that's a liquid formulation in a vial, correct?

7 A. Sorry. Example 3 on page 9?

8 Q. Yes, sir.

9 A. My page 9 has Examples 7 and 8.

10 Q. I'm sorry. Page 8. My fault. Example 3 on page 8
11 is directed to a liquid formulation in a vial, correct?

12 A. Correct.

13 Q. And liquid protein formulations in a vial, they were
14 known before your '865 patent, correct?

15 A. Generally speaking. Is that what you're asking,
16 liquid formulations?

17 Q. Yes.

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And we saw yesterday, we discussed the Lucentis and
20 the Avastin formulations were liquid formulations known,
21 correct?

22 A. Yes, they were liquid formulations known.

23 Q. And your Example 3 also contains 10 millimolar
24 phosphate, correct?

25 A. That's correct.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 Q. You didn't invent a phosphate buffer for a protein
2 formulation, correct?

3 A. I'm not sure exactly how to answer that. I didn't
4 invent a phosphate --

5 Q. Let me back up.

6 A. I invented the use of a phosphate buffer in this
7 formulation to stabilize aflibercept.

8 Q. But phosphate buffers were known before your patent,
9 correct?

10 A. That's correct. Phosphate buffers were known.

11 Q. Now, your Example 3 also contains 5 percent sucrose,
12 correct?

13 A. Yes, that's correct.

14 Q. And sucrose stabilizers were known before your '865
15 patent, correct?

16 A. They were known generally as a class of molecules
17 that could stabilize proteins, yes.

18 Q. And Example 3 also contains 0.03 percent
19 polysorbate 20, correct?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And polysorbate 20, I believe you said yesterday, was
22 a known excipient before your patent, correct?

23 A. That's correct.

24 Q. Now, we discussed yesterday, I believe, Lucentis
25 formulation we looked at was for intravitreal administration

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 and that had used sodium succinate, trehalose, and
2 polysorbate 20, correct?

3 A. That's my recollection.

4 Q. So you would agree those excipients would be suitable
5 for intravitreal administration, correct?

6 A. So depends whether you mean at the time that I was
7 inventing this or what eventually became true.

8 Q. Before your patent, you would agree it was known that
9 excipients used in Lucentis would be suitable for use in an
10 intravitreal injection, correct?

11 A. I don't know that there was enough data to make that
12 claim at that point.

13 Q. So you would have needed more test data at the time
14 to know that?

15 A. I think so, yes.

16 Q. And would the same answer be true for the excipients
17 in the Avastin formulation for your patent? You would have
18 needed more test data to know whether those would have been
19 suitable for intravitreal administration?

20 A. Yes, probably.

21 Q. And that's true even though Avastin had been used in
22 the eye by intravitreal administration, correct?

23 A. One patient and also animal studies suggesting that
24 it could be problematic.

25 Q. So you wouldn't have known before your patent whether

1 you could use the Avastin excipients in the eye?

2 A. Not for sure. No, you wouldn't.

3 Q. Now, let's talk about buffers. Can you confirm for
4 me, sir, that every example in your patent, 1 through 8, they
5 all use a phosphate buffer, correct?

6 A. Correct, they all use a phosphate buffer.

7 Q. And you didn't personally develop a histidine buffer
8 aflibercept formulation when you were at Regeneron, correct?

9 A. I'm not sure the timing of when the histidine buffer
10 was developed, whether it overlapped with my time or not. I
11 don't recall working on it. I think I stated that previously
12 in deposition. But I can't tell you for sure that it didn't
13 happen and I'm just not remembering.

14 Q. I think you testified at your deposition you couldn't
15 recall seeing a histidine buffer formulation during your time
16 at Regeneron. Is that right?

17 A. I did not recall it, that's correct.

18 Q. Now, I'd like to switch gears -- yesterday you talked
19 about the Gaudreault reference from Genentech.

20 Do you recall that?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And I believe you testified that there was -- the
23 results from Gaudreault, the transient ocular inflammation, I
24 believe you used the words, were concerning or discouraging at
25 the time to you.

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 Do you recall that?

2 A. I do recall that, yes.

3 Q. Now, to be clear, there was nothing discouraging
4 about those results to Genentech, correct?

5 A. Actually, I think there probably was, but it would be
6 me inferring things. The fact is that they didn't go with a
7 40 mg/mL formulation and they could have, and perhaps that was
8 part of the reason why they didn't.

9 Q. They continued to develop their Lucentis formulation
10 despite the Gaudreault results, correct?

11 A. The 10 and lower, not the 40.

12 Q. But they continued to develop despite the results,
13 right?

14 A. They continued to develop the lower concentrations
15 despite the results, yes.

16 Q. Now, Regeneron wasn't discouraged by those results
17 from pursuing Eylea either, correct?

18 A. We thought that it was possible that there could be
19 something specific to Eylea -- excuse me -- specific to
20 ranibizumab and it could be possible for us to find something
21 better, yes.

22 Q. And you actually continued developing Eylea even
23 after seeing the Gaudreault results, correct?

24 A. Yes, we did.

25 Q. And, in fact, you saw similar results of transient

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 ocular inflammation in your own monkey studies, correct?

2 A. It's been a while since I've looked at that data, but
3 I believe that's correct.

4 Q. Let's pull up PTX 3255. Should be in your binder.
5 And let's look at page 4.

6 A. Say the number. 5 --

7 Q. Yes, sir. PTX 3255.

8 THE COURT: 3255, Counsel?

9 MR. RAKOCZY: Yes.

10 THE COURT: Thank you.

11 THE WITNESS: 3255, yes.

12 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

13 Q. You see this is the nonclinical overview from the
14 BLA, correct?

15 A. I do.

16 Q. If you look at page 4, there's a reference in that
17 sentence to a comprehensive toxicology program, including a
18 treatment schedule of every two to six weeks.

19 Do you see that?

20 A. This is page 4?

21 Q. Yes. It's on your screen as well.

22 A. Yes, I see the paragraph now.

23 Q. So if we go to page 19 of this exhibit, you see a
24 reference to a repeat-dose toxicity study, correct?

25 A. I do.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. And we see there that the chronic toxicity of VEGF
2 Trap was evaluated in the -- I'm going to mispronounce it
3 again -- cynomolgus monkey, correct?

4 A. That's correct.

5 Q. Let's look at -- a little further down in that
6 paragraph we see the results. We see Regeneron told the FDA
7 that the "ocular findings were consistent across all GLP IVT
8 studies and consisted primarily of mild and transient ocular
9 inflammation."

10 A. Correct.

11 Q. Is that correct?

12 A. Yes, that's what it states here.

13 Q. And then if you go a couple sentences down, Regeneron
14 concluded that "these ocular findings were mostly or completely
15 reversible before the next dose or during the recovery
16 periods." Correct?

17 A. I'm just trying to find where you're reading this.

18 Q. It's in that same paragraph, fifth line down.

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. Now, these results did not discourage Eylea's
21 development, correct?

22 A. They did not.

23 Q. And when you said the results from Gaudreault were
24 concerning, you're not suggesting that moderate to severe
25 inflammation would somehow outweigh vision loss, are you?

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 A. Moderate to severe inflammation -- repeated moderate
2 to severe inflammation might cause vision loss.

3 Q. So your view is that moderate to severe vision loss
4 that could resolve in a week would be enough to stop
5 development of a drug that can prevent vision loss. That's
6 your testimony?

7 A. My testimony is not exactly that. It's that a
8 repeated moderate to severe inflammation could have
9 consequences that might result in vision loss. You would have
10 to do the experiments.

11 Q. But that inflammation, that transient inflammation
12 that resolved in a week or two, was not enough to prevent
13 Lucentis development or Eylea development, correct?

14 A. It prevented -- well, by inference, because they did
15 not develop the 40 mg/mL formulation, it would suggest that
16 they were concerned about the same thing because they stuck
17 with 10, which didn't have that finding in that study.

18 Q. The Gaudreault paper concluded that all the doses
19 they tested had transient inflammation that resolved.

20 A. The degree. It's a severity. You have to include
21 the severity when you make your judgment of what you want to
22 do.

23 Q. All right. Let's actually -- I forgot to mention
24 something in your patent. Let's toggle back to your patent.

25 A. Okay. Remind me.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. PTX 2. If we go to page 2. And I'm going to
2 focus -- and I'll put it on the screen -- on the application
3 number and date.

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. And you see that the --

6 If we could go down, Mr. Gibson, to the application
7 number in the middle.

8 You see this patent issued from Application
9 Number 16 --

10 A. -- 739 --

11 Q. -- 739,559, filed January 20 -- let me back up. Let
12 me strike that. I'll start over.

13 Your '865 patent issued from Application Number
14 16/739,559 filed January 10, 2020; is that right?

15 A. That's correct.

16 Q. I want to look further down on this same page to the
17 related U.S. application data.

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. You see that section?

20 A. I do.

21 Q. And I want to focus on paragraph 60 where it says
22 "Provisional Application."

23 Do you see that?

24 A. I do.

25 Q. And so the provisional application, number 60/814,484

1 was filed on January 16, 2006, correct?

2 A. Say that number again, which one you were...

3 Q. Yes. So it's highlighted on the screen.

4 A. Sorry.

5 Q. The U.S. Provisional Application Number 60/814 --

6 A. Right.

7 Q. -- 484 was filed on June 16, 2006, correct?

8 A. That's correct, yes.

9 Q. Are you okay if I refer to that as the provisional
10 application just for short?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Now, let's look at PTX 8. I'm sorry. Strike that.

13 Let's look at PTX 3249, which is in the small binder
14 right in front of you.

15 A. Sorry. It's not another tab on here?

16 Q. No. The small binder right there. Go to PTX 3249.

17 If we go to page 8, please.

18 A. Okay.

19 Q. You see this is the provisional application for
20 patent. Do you see that?

21 A. I do.

22 Q. And you're listed as an inventor right there. Do you
23 see that?

24 A. Yes, I do.

25 Q. And you see the title is "VEGF Antagonist Formulation

1 Suitable for Intravitreal Administration," correct?

2 A. Yes, I do.

3 Q. And if you go to the bottom of this page, you see
4 dated June 16, 2006, correct?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Did you review this provisional application before it
7 was filed on June 16, 2006?

8 A. I presume that I did, but, honestly, I don't remember
9 that far ago. That was, like, 20 years ago or something.

10 Q. How about before your testimony yesterday? Did you
11 review this provisional application before yesterday?

12 A. I reviewed the patent application, but I'm trying to
13 remember if I reviewed the first -- I think I might have
14 reviewed the provisional, but I can't remember for certain.

15 Q. So do you remember doing a side-by-side comparison of
16 this provisional application with your issued '865 patent
17 before your testimony yesterday?

18 A. I don't recall doing a side-by-side comparison, no.

19 Q. Let's look at page 11 of your provisional
20 application. So that's PTX 32 --

21 A. It doesn't mean that I didn't. I just don't recall.

22 Q. I'm asking, before your testimony yesterday, did you
23 do a line-by-line comparison?

24 A. No, not that I remember, no.

25 Q. So let's look at page 11 of your provisional

1 application. And I've got it on screen, PTX 3249.

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. And I'd like to focus on paragraph 8 and the sentence
4 that starts "more specifically, the ophthalmic formulations
5 comprise."

6 Do you see that?

7 A. I see in paragraph 8 is "in several embodiments,"
8 right, "more specifically," yes.

9 Q. So you see that sentence that starts "more
10 specifically, the ophthalmic formulation comprises," and then
11 it continues on, correct?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. So I want to toggle back to your issued '865 patent,
14 which is PTX 2 --

15 A. Right.

16 Q. -- at page 4. And we'll put it on the screen. And I
17 want to focus on Column 2, lines 53 to 57. And we'll put it on
18 screen.

19 A. Okay.

20 Q. You see here in your '865 patent, it says, "more
21 specifically, stable liquid ophthalmic formulation." So you
22 see the words "stable liquid" have been added.

23 Do you see that?

24 A. I see this "stable liquid" in this one. I haven't
25 looked to see if it's not in the other one.

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 MR. RAKOCZY: Mr. Gibson, can we please pull up that
2 paragraph 8 from the provisional. If we put it next to the
3 paragraph from PTX 2, please.

4 BY MR. RAKOCZY:

5 Q. All right. So you see on screen in the provisional
6 paragraph 8, you see it says "the ophthalmic formulation."

7 Do you see that?

8 A. Correct, the top one.

9 Q. Yes, that's the provisional. And in your '865
10 patent, it says, "the stable liquid ophthalmic formulation,"
11 correct?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Did you add "stable liquid" to the '865 patent
14 specification?

15 A. I don't recall personally doing that. I don't write
16 the applications.

17 Q. Did you authorize someone to add the words "stable
18 liquid" to your '865 patent specification?

19 A. I do not believe I -- I didn't -- I didn't authorize
20 or not authorize. I wasn't involved in that, to my
21 recollection.

22 Q. Your '865 patent claims are all directed to stable
23 liquid formulations, correct?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Now, I'd like to put up a demonstrative for you of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 your PTX 2, and we'll call up DDX 5 at page 5.

2 What I've done here is I've highlighted in yellow
3 parts of Columns 3 and 4 from your issued '865 patent at PTX 2
4 at page 5.

5 Do you see that on your screen?

6 A. I see it here. It's easier for me to look at the
7 book here, but yes.

8 Q. Are you aware that everything that is highlighted on
9 this demonstrative in Columns 3 and 4 of your '865 patent -- so
10 it's Columns 3, line 11, extending through Column 4, line 10,
11 of PTX 2 -- is not found in your original provisional
12 application? Are you aware of that?

13 A. I'm not aware of that. I've not done the
14 head-to-head comparison, as you suggested.

15 Q. So at no time before your testimony today or
16 yesterday did you do the comparison to see that this is all new
17 matter added to your '865 patent, correct?

18 A. I did not -- I did not do the comparison to be able
19 to detect that that was the case.

20 Q. Did you authorize anyone to add all this new material
21 to your '865 patent?

22 A. Again, I didn't authorize or not authorize. I don't
23 recall being involved in that process.

24 Q. Let's stay on DDX 5, page 5, and I'd like to look at
25 Column 3, lines 36 to 40. If we could blow that up. And I'd

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 like to focus on -- I apologize. I'm pointing to the wrong --
2 I'm sorry.

3 Column 3, lines 36 to 40. And do you see here in the
4 third line it says "about 0.013 to about 0.1 percent
5 polysorbate"? Do you see that?

6 A. Can you just tell me -- I'm having trouble finding
7 this. Is this in the Column 3?

8 Q. Yes. Column 3, lines 36 to 40.

9 A. I see it now.

10 Q. And do you see there is a range there for the
11 polysorbate? It says, "about 0.3 to about 0.1 percent
12 polysorbate." Do you see that?

13 A. I do see that, yes.

14 Q. Do you know whether that exact range is found in your
15 provisional application?

16 A. I do not recall if it is or isn't.

17 Q. I would like to look at one more portion of this
18 highlighted document. If we could look at Column 4, lines 36
19 to 44.

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And you see this is a paragraph directed to a
22 lyophilizable ophthalmic formulation. Do you see that?

23 A. I do.

24 Q. Are you aware of whether this paragraph in this
25 formulation appears in your provisional application?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - CROSS

1 A. I don't recall it being in there or not. I don't
2 remember everything that's in that provisional application.

3 Q. And assuming it wasn't in your provisional, did you
4 authorize anyone to add this paragraph to your issued '865
5 patent?

6 A. I didn't authorize or not authorize that.

7 Q. All right. Thank you, sir.

8 MR. RAKOCZY: I believe I have a couple exhibits to
9 move in, Your Honor.

10 Move to admit PTX 1519, PTX 3255, and PTX 3249.

11 THE COURT: Any objection to those three exhibits?

12 THE WITNESS: I'm sorry. Can you say that --

13 THE COURT: We're just tidying up, Doctor. I'm
14 sorry, sir. That wasn't a question for you.

15 Any objection to any of those exhibits?

16 MR. BERL: Oh, sorry. No. That was a question for
17 me?

18 THE COURT: That was a question for you.

19 MR. BERL: We're all confused. I can be better at
20 this. I've been here before.

21 No, I have no objection, Your Honor.

22 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

23 I'll repeat something that I shared at home. For
24 those of you unfamiliar with the sports calendar of West
25 Virginia middle school and high school sports, we're in what we

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - REDIRECT

1 call three-week period, which means school, even though it's
2 out, the various teams will have workouts and play in
3 tournaments and the rest. The time-old adage from when I was
4 younger, Wednesday of camp week is always the hardest day of
5 basketball camp. That applies to trial as well.

6 So with that, those exhibits, so admitted with no
7 objection and pass the witness.

8 (PTX 1519, PTX 3255, and PTX 3249 were
9 admitted.)

10 MR. RAKOCZY: Pass the witness.

11 THE COURT: Understood.

12 Mr. Berl, recognize it's Wednesday of basketball camp
13 week, sir. You're up, redirect.

14 MR. BERL: It's been a great basketball week for me,
15 Your Honor. I've waited 40 years for my favorite team to win a
16 championship, and it finally happened.

17 THE COURT: Congratulations, sir. Congratulations.

18 MR. BERL: Thank you.

19 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

20 BY MR. BERL:

21 Q. Dr. Furfine, I'd like to start with where Mr. Rakoczy
22 left off with your provisional application, which is PTX 3249.

23 Can we put page 11 on the screen, the same page that
24 Mr. Rakoczy just asked Dr. Furfine about.

25 And Mr. Rakoczy asked you various questions about

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 paragraph 8.

2 Can we blow that up.

3 And do you recall questions in which Mr. Rakoczy was
4 suggesting that the provisional application does not include a
5 disclosure of the words "stable liquid" before formulation.

6 Do you recall that?

7 A. I do.

8 Q. Now, let's take a look at paragraph 7, same page,
9 higher up. Did Mr. Rakoczy show you this paragraph,
10 Dr. Furfine?

11 A. He did not.

12 Q. And can you read the first four words of that
13 paragraph.

14 A. "The stable liquid ophthalmic formulation of the
15 invention."

16 Q. Now, Mr. Rakoczy also showed you PTX 3255.

17 Let's pull that up on page 19.

18 Do you recall he asked you some questions about
19 toxicology studies that were conducted at Regeneron?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. And he asked you various questions about the
22 particular data, including evidence of inflammation. Do you
23 remember that?

24 A. I do.

25 Q. Just to be clear, was this information public as of

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - REDIRECT

1 the time of your invention?

2 A. I don't believe it was, no.

3 Q. And is this information the same information that
4 Genentech published in Gaudreault or is it more detailed and
5 additional information?

6 A. This is much more detailed and a much more detailed
7 and extensive study of animals than their study was.

8 Q. And, now, if we go back to the Gaudreault reference,
9 which he was asking you about in purported comparison to this
10 exhibit -- this is Exhibit 1839.

11 And if we could go to the portion that we talked
12 about on direct examination about the toxicity of the 40 versus
13 10 mg/mL ranibizumab injections into the eye.

14 Now, Doctor, were the results that you obtained with
15 your Eylea formulation the same as the results that Genentech
16 obtained with their 40 mg/mL ranibizumab formulation?

17 A. No. These results seem less severe than what's
18 stated here.

19 Q. Sorry. "These" and "these" won't come up on the
20 transcript?

21 A. I'm sorry. You're right. I'm sorry.

22 The aflibercept data appears to be less severe than
23 what is noted here in the ranibizumab paper.

24 Q. And in the ranibizumab paper they found inflammation
25 that was from absent to moderate at 500 micrograms per eye; is

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - REDIRECT

1 that right?

2 A. That's correct.

3 Q. Is that the same as the 10 mg/mL?

4 A. That's correct.

5 Q. And then it was moderate to severe for 40 mg/mL?

6 A. That's correct.

7 Q. And what was your understanding about whether
8 Genentech continued to develop this 40 mg/mL that was indicated
9 publicly to cause moderate to severe inflammation?

10 A. They did not progress anything beyond the 10 mg/mL
11 formulation.

12 Q. Is that surprising to you in view of the data that
13 they published?

14 A. It's not.

15 Q. Now, I'd like to go back and discuss a few things
16 that Mr. Rakoczy talked about yesterday.

17 He asked you various questions about whether
18 polysorbate dissolves aflibercept. When you formulate
19 proteins, Dr. Furfine, do they start out as a solid, like a
20 powder, or are they in liquid?

21 A. They're liquid at all times unless they become
22 lyophilized at some point.

23 Q. So when you're doing a liquid formulation, do you
24 dissolve the active ingredient like aflibercept like someone
25 would dissolve sugar in their coffee?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - REDIRECT

1 A. No, you do not.

2 Q. You were asked various questions about whether
3 polysorbate dissolves protein aggregates. Do solvents dissolve
4 protein aggregates?

5 A. No.

6 Q. What do they do instead with respect to aggregates?

7 A. They protect against degradation and precipitation
8 and falling out of solution.

9 Q. So does water dissolve protein aggregates?

10 A. No.

11 Q. Does water remove protein aggregates?

12 A. No.

13 Q. Do solvents remove protein aggregates generally?

14 A. No.

15 Q. Okay. Now, you were shown documents yesterday by
16 Mr. Rakoczy in which you called polysorbate a stabilizing
17 agent, including in the BLA. Do you recall that?

18 A. I do recall that, yes.

19 Q. When you call something a stabilizer, is that an
20 indication that it's not increasing solubility?

21 A. No. They're two separate things, and it can do both.

22 Q. Did you also call polysorbate an organic cosolvent in
23 your documents at the time?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Let's pull up PTX 86 again.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - REDIRECT

1 If we go to the front, is this again a document that
2 you -- that reflects meeting minutes from February 2004?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And if we go to page 5. And if we put up -- you said
5 here in 2004, "VEGF Trap" -- is that referring to aflibercept?

6 A. It is, yes.

7 Q. -- "requires the presence of an organic cosolvent to
8 stabilize the protein against agitation-induced aggregation."

9 Do you see that?

10 A. Yes, I do.

11 Q. And you see further down in the paragraph, what
12 organic cosolvents are you providing as examples in 2004?

13 A. PEG and polysorbate.

14 Q. Are you saying that those aren't stabilizers because
15 you called them organic cosolvents?

16 A. No. We're saying they are. They serve both
17 purposes.

18 Q. There was some suggestion yesterday, when Mr. Rakoczy
19 was showing you a lot of Genentech articles from the 2005 time
20 frame, that you got the idea of using an organic cosolvent like
21 polysorbate from Genentech. Was this written before 2005 or
22 during or after 2005?

23 A. This was written in -- before.

24 Q. Now, you answered some questions yesterday about
25 whether various ingredients like trehalose were being used, how

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - REDIRECT

1 they were being used in Genentech's program. Do you remember?

2 A. I do recall, yes.

3 Q. Do you recall your testimony that you couldn't be
4 sure what they were doing in Genentech's formulations without
5 seeing data?

6 A. That's correct.

7 Q. What if someone who was participating in Genentech's
8 program told you how they were functioning in Genentech's
9 formulations? Then would you know?

10 A. Yes, you would, absolutely.

11 Q. In your patent do you tell the public what trehalose
12 and other sugar stabilizers are doing?

13 A. We do.

14 Q. Now, a few more points.

15 There was a suggestion yesterday that bevacizumab,
16 the active ingredient in Avastin, is much bigger than
17 aflibercept. Do you recall those questions?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. In terms of how much space aflibercept occupies
20 compared to bevacizumab, is bevacizumab bigger?

21 A. Not substantially, if at all.

22 Q. Now, you were asked at the beginning of the
23 cross-examination about whether you invented aflibercept. Do
24 you remember that?

25 A. I do.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

ERIC FURFINE, PhD - REDIRECT

1 Q. Can aflibercept be administered by itself with
2 nothing else?

3 A. No.

4 Q. How is it administered?

5 A. It's administered as the formulation called Eylea.

6 Q. And did you help invent that?

7 A. I did.

8 Q. Thank you. No further questions, Dr. Furfine.

9 MR. BERL: I do have some exhibits to read in,
10 though.

11 THE COURT: At a measured pace.

12 MR. BERL: I absolutely will. I didn't need a
13 reminder, but thank you.

14 PTX 2, PTX 579, PTX 1848, PTX 82, PTX 1785, PTX 1079,
15 PTX 3257, PTX 1839, PTX 81, PTX 2223, PTX 97, PTX 98, PTX 86,
16 and PTX 2224.

17 THE COURT: Any objection to any of those, Counsel?

18 MR. RAKOCZY: One moment, Your Honor. It's a long
19 list.

20 THE COURT: Certainly.

21 MR. RAKOCZY: No objection, Your Honor.

22 THE COURT: Without objection, Mr. Berl's lists are
23 all deemed hereby admitted.

24 (PTX 2, PTX 579, PTX 1848, PTX 82, PTX
25 1785, PTX 1079, PTX 3257, PTX 1839, PTX 81, PTX

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 2223, PTX 97, PTX 98, PTX 86, PTX 2224 were
2 admitted.)

3 THE COURT: Recross?

4 MR. RAKOCZY: Nothing from us, Your Honor.

5 THE COURT: Nothing.

6 Doctor, you may step down, sir. And, unfortunately,
7 I now must lift my ban of anyone speaking to you; so you're
8 fair game. Thank you very much. You can leave all that there.
9 Someone will tidy up. Thank you very much.

10 If I could ask counsel to clean up and get whatever
11 Madam Clerk requires to her, please. Thank you.

12 Call your next witness.

13 MR. BERL: Thank you, Your Honor. Plaintiffs call
14 Dr. Bernhardt Trout.

15 THE COURT: Doctor, good morning.

16 **BERNHARDT TROUT, PLAINTIFF'S WITNESS, SWORN**

17 THE COURT: Thank you so much, Doctor. Once you're
18 seated and comfortable, if you wouldn't mind adjusting that mic
19 so everyone can hear you. Take a pause for a few seconds while
20 we distribute binders. Thank you, sir.

21 Counsel, you may proceed whenever you're ready.

22 MR. BERL: Thank you, Your Honor.

23 DIRECT EXAMINATION

24 BY MR. BERL:

25 Q. Good morning, Dr. Trout.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 A. Good morning, Mr. Berl.

2 Q. Could you please introduce yourself to the Court.

3 A. Yes. My name is Bernhardt Trout.

4 Q. And what do you do, Dr. Trout?

5 A. I'm a professor of chemical engineering at MIT in the
6 Boston area.

7 Q. And can you briefly describe your educational
8 background.

9 A. Yes. I was an undergraduate at MIT, also got a
10 master's degree both in chemical engineering. And then I went
11 to University of California at Berkeley also for my PhD in
12 chemical engineering. And then I did a postdoctoral engagement
13 at the Max Planck Institute in --

14 THE COURT: Could you spell that for us.

15 THE WITNESS: Yes. M-A-X P-L-A-N-C-K.

16 THE COURT: Thank you very much.

17 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir.

18 An institute in Stuttgart, Germany.

19 BY MR. BERL:

20 Q. What did you do after that?

21 A. After that, I returned to MIT but this time on the
22 faculty at the beginning of 1998 also in chemical engineering.

23 Q. And have you been there since?

24 A. Yes, I have been.

25 Q. Can you briefly describe the research you conduct at

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 MIT.

2 A. Yes. In a word, I describe it as pharmaceutical
3 development and manufacturing research.

4 Q. And does your research include both small molecules
5 and proteins?

6 A. Yes, it does.

7 Q. And what are you doing with formulation research
8 generally?

9 A. Well, that's a major aspect of what I've been doing
10 since I started in 1998. So I do research in order to advance
11 the field in formulation -- excuse me -- in formulation, better
12 understand formulations and formulizing, and also developing
13 algorithms to try to make predictions.

14 Q. Have you worked on any biologic therapeutics?

15 A. Yes, I have. I've worked on quite a few biologics,
16 again, starting in 1998 when I began as an independent
17 researcher.

18 Q. Approximately how many biologic therapeutics have you
19 worked on?

20 A. Probably roughly around 50.

21 Q. Have you worked on any molecules administered to the
22 eye?

23 A. Yes. I have worked on bevacizumab, which we've been
24 talking about in this case.

25 Q. Do you teach?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 A. Yes, I do.

2 Q. And who do you teach?

3 A. Well, I teach primarily at MIT. I teach
4 undergraduates, graduate students, classes, fundamental classes
5 in chemical engineering. And then I also teach researchers,
6 graduate students, postdoctoral researchers. I should say
7 undergraduates are also in my laboratory.

8 And then I also have a professional short course
9 every year that I teach on bioformulation to professionals in
10 the industry, which, as a matter of fact, I just taught last
11 week.

12 Q. And can you describe who attends that course and what
13 they learn.

14 A. Yes. There's a variety of professionals. I would
15 say roughly half, perhaps a bit more than half, are junior
16 formulation scientists. And then the other half are scientists
17 in other aspects of pharmaceuticals discovery, manufacturing,
18 and also managers who want to learn about bioformulation.

19 Q. Where do people who take this course from you work?

20 A. Well, they work at -- typically at a variety of
21 companies, from large companies, big pharma, to medium to
22 small, even startup. We also have sometimes people from
23 government, from national labs, and other organizations.

24 Q. Do you consult with industry?

25 A. Yes, I do.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 Q. Can you describe generally what that involves.

2 A. Yes. It generally involves two types of engagements.
3 So one is more strategic. For example, I'll be invited to be
4 on a scientific advisory board, and then I'll go to the company
5 and provide general advice on their strategies, like their
6 formulation strategies.

7 And the other is more targeted. A company might have
8 a problem, a problem with protein stability, for example. And
9 then they'll ask me to try to help them to solve that problem.

10 Q. Do you work with governments?

11 A. Yes, I do. I've worked with the FDA for some time,
12 since approximately 2007, but I also work with other regulatory
13 agencies around the world. And we actually just convened a
14 conference in April. For the first time since COVID,
15 reengaging the community on regulations and also development of
16 pharmaceutical manufacturing technologies.

17 Q. Have you published?

18 A. Yes, I have.

19 Q. And approximately how many papers have you published
20 in the field of protein formulation?

21 A. Well, I've published over 200 papers total, and I
22 would say over 50, maybe close to 60, are in protein
23 formulation.

24 Q. Have you won any awards of note?

25 A. Well, I've won some awards.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 Q. Any in particular that stand out?

2 A. Well, the one, I guess, that most stands out is a
3 recent award from my peers at the American Institute of
4 Chemical Engineers. It was an award on drug product quality or
5 advancing drug product quality.

6 Q. We've talked about protein formulation and
7 stabilization in this case. Is that your only area of
8 expertise?

9 A. No. I also work in the area of pharmaceutical
10 manufacturing and the interface between the two, between
11 protein formulation/development and manufacturing.

12 Q. Have you been qualified as an expert in federal court
13 before?

14 A. Yes, I have.

15 Q. Have you testified for both patent owners and patent
16 challengers?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. If you could turn to PTX 66C in your binder, and we
19 can maybe put the first page up on the screen.

20 Doctor, what is this?

21 A. This is my CV.

22 Q. And does this summarize your professional experience?

23 A. Yes.

24 MR. BERL: We offer Dr. Trout as an expert in
25 formulation and stabilization of protein therapeutics and

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 small-molecule therapeutics.

2 THE COURT: Any voir dire or objection to the motion?

3 MR. RAKOCZY: No objection, Your Honor.

4 THE COURT: Without objection, then, the doctor is so
5 qualified.

6 You may proceed, Mr. Berl.

7 MR. BERL: Thank you, Your Honor.

8 BY MR. BERL:

9 Q. Now, before we get into the details, then, of the
10 infringement testimony you're going to give today, Dr. Trout,
11 I'd like to discuss a little background with you.

12 You said you do research on formulations. What is
13 formulation research?

14 A. Well, formulation research is kind of a key part
15 here. I'm sure the Court and others remember the pictures from
16 Dr. Csaky yesterday in terms of actually how the eye is
17 injected.

18 THE COURT: I do.

19 THE WITNESS: I figured you would, Your Honor. We
20 all do.

21 So doctor -- I guess my job is -- so professionals,
22 doctors like Dr. Csaky, doesn't have to be concerned about
23 various aspects of injecting the pharmaceutical. And, for that
24 matter, the patient doesn't either. For example, the product
25 is stable, doesn't form particulates which might go in the eye.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 The other is of course we talked -- we don't want the needle
2 clogged while doctors or any doctor is giving an injection.

3 And then another aspect is what we call viscosity or
4 the thickness of the formulation. It goes through a very thin
5 needle. And, again, I don't think it's hard to convince
6 everyone that we don't want the needle in there for a long
7 period of time; so it has to be a thin enough fluid so it can
8 go in pretty quickly.

9 BY MR. BERL:

10 Q. Is formulation research as simple as taking a
11 formulation and substituting it into a new molecule?

12 A. No, sir. That's not what we do. That's not how
13 formulation works.

14 Q. Now, I'd like to discuss the concept of solubility
15 with you. What does solubility mean in the context of protein
16 formulations?

17 A. Well, with -- many protein formulations are
18 formulated as liquid in aqueous or water solutions. And
19 solubility is the concept of keeping it in solution under
20 whatever condition it might be subjected to.

21 Q. And is there one solubility for a given protein in a
22 formulation?

23 A. No. Even for a given formulation, that solubility
24 will depend on conditions, for example, temperature and
25 pressure, including shear.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 Q. Is there such a thing as a protein simply being fully
2 in solution without regard to the temperature or pressure
3 conditions?

4 A. No. Those are essential conditions in determining
5 and defining solubility.

6 Q. Dr. Trout, have you prepared demonstratives to help
7 explain the scientific principles relevant to your testimony
8 today?

9 A. Yes, I have.

10 Q. Let's take a look, starting with Demonstrative
11 Slide 3.

12 MR. BERL: And, Your Honor, this has demonstratives
13 as well as portions of documents that we'll be using with
14 Dr. Trout today --

15 THE COURT: Understood.

16 MR. BERL: -- so it's useful to follow along compared
17 to the binder, I hope.

18 BY MR. BERL:

19 Q. We've shown PDX 5-3.0003, Dr. Trout. Can you explain
20 what's shown here?

21 A. Yes. Here I just show a comparison between a typical
22 small-molecule pharmaceutical aspirin and a biologic or
23 large-molecule pharmaceutical like aflibercept. This is more
24 or less to scale. Hopefully, the Court can see there's a
25 little speck there which is represented as aspirin. And you

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 can see here is the molecular weight. And that's
2 0.18 kilodaltons. That was brought up yesterday in court. And
3 it's just a measure of the weight but in molecular units like
4 pounds or kilograms. And then the aflibercept is about
5 115 kilodaltons. So it's about 1,000 times bigger in terms of
6 size, which is reflected in the relative scale here.

7 THE COURT: Just so I'm clear, when we say aspirin,
8 we're talking about aspirin?

9 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. Well, in a certain sense
10 we're talking just about the molecule aspirin, not the
11 formulation aspirin.

12 THE COURT: A singular molecule of aspirin?

13 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir. Correct.

14 THE COURT: Understood. Thank you.

15 BY MR. BERL:

16 Q. So these proteins like aflibercept, do they come in
17 solution, in a liquid state, or are they in a powder state like
18 something like aspirin?

19 A. Not like aspirin. They're in a liquid state from
20 manufacturing. And, again, the idea is to maintain them in a
21 liquid state. Aspirin I think we're familiar with is typically
22 formulated into a tablet, and it comes from manufacturing as a
23 powder and is made into a tablet.

24 Q. So what do solvents do for proteins if it's already a
25 liquid to start with?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 A. Well, solvent does what solvents do to molecules that
2 keep it in solution. For example, water will interact with the
3 protein around the surface of the protein and will orient
4 itself to keep it in solution.

5 Q. Are solvents added to dissolve or remove aggregates
6 in protein formulations?

7 A. No. Typically, aggregates are irreversible. So once
8 they form, they don't go backwards.

9 Q. So is making a protein formulation, is it like what I
10 talked about a moment ago, like taking sugar and dissolving it
11 in your coffee?

12 A. No, on the contrary. Again, aspirin, we could make
13 an analogy with sugar. That can be dissolved and then formed a
14 solid again, a powder. But proteins, typically, we want to
15 keep them in solution. Again, they come in the liquid state
16 from manufacturing. And if they start precipitating or
17 becoming insoluble, it's typically irreversible.

18 Q. I'd like to discuss now with you how that happens and
19 how those aggregates can form.

20 If we could go to Exhibit PTX 1556.

21 Is this an article by Wang in 2005 that you reviewed
22 in connection with your work in this case?

23 A. Yes, it is.

24 Q. If we look at the abstract on the first page, it
25 says, "Protein aggregation is arguably the most common and

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 troubling manifestation of protein instability encountered in
2 almost all stages of protein drug development."

3 Can you explain what Wang is conveying here?

4 A. Yes. This is the first sentence of the abstract, so
5 really the first sentence in the paper. And it talks about,
6 right here, protein aggregation. That's the protein molecules
7 coming together, which we don't want. That's a manifestation
8 of the instability. And it's omnipresent is what Wang is
9 saying here.

10 Q. Let's go to page 3 of the article. And we have blown
11 up a paragraph that begins with "protein aggregation has been
12 observed frequently."

13 Can you explain what Wang is saying here?

14 A. Yes. Well, again, Wang is talking about protein
15 aggregation, as I just mentioned from the abstract.

16 And specifically I've highlighted, Your Honor, two
17 places, shearing/shaking. So that's an example of a pressure
18 or pressure disturbance which is going to be omnipresent in --

19 THE COURT: And shearing would refer to the
20 propulsion, if you will, of the solution through the needle.

21 THE WITNESS: Yes, sir, that can be it. But also
22 during shipping, for example, during usage when the doctor or
23 the medical professional takes it out, it can slosh around, to
24 use a better term. So certainly that's the case. And then
25 also just during storage, to name two examples.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 BY MR. BERL:

2 Q. Are there particular conditions that scientists would
3 think about in assessing intravitreal formulations?

4 A. Yes. So, again, for intravitreal we want the needle
5 to be as thin as possible, typically, a 30-gauge needle, which
6 has a very thin bore, which means that the solution has to get
7 through that bore. And it can -- it is -- the bore exerts
8 significant shear, a great amount of shear, because of the very
9 small diameter.

10 Q. Doctor, what is the connection between this protein
11 aggregation that Wang is discussing on the one hand and the
12 concept of solubility that you discussed a moment ago?

13 A. Well, protein aggregation is, first of all, the first
14 stage of solubility, and then it also -- or first stage towards
15 insolubility I should say, and it also describes the insoluble
16 particles which can be called insoluble aggregates.

17 Q. Can a protein come out of solution without
18 aggregation?

19 A. No.

20 Q. What does it mean for a protein to stay in solution?

21 A. Well, it means that it is in solution. It is
22 surrounded by the solvent molecules, primarily water molecules,
23 and it doesn't aggregate and eventually come out of solution
24 and precipitate.

25 Q. What's the problem with a protein not staying in

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 solution?

2 A. Well, there are several problems. One problem is
3 that, if it comes out of solution, it's typically inactivated
4 so it's not going to be useful to the pharmaceutical or at
5 least the material that comes out of solution.

6 But above and beyond that, it can cause serious
7 reactions. We talked about inflammation even earlier today,
8 but then even the most serious one is immune response, which
9 means that the body's immune system can actually attack the
10 molecule which is meant to be a therapeutic.

11 Q. Let's take a look further down on page 3 of Wang,
12 under the Subsection 2 in the paper "Protein aggregation and
13 its influencing factors."

14 What is Wang writing here?

15 A. Well, Wang is just talking about two categories of
16 aggregation, which I've highlighted in yellow. The first
17 category is physical aggregation. So that's molecules coming
18 together, for example, through hydrophobic, hydrophobic
19 effects. I'll have some pictures of that shortly. But that
20 does not involve the breaking or formation of chemical bonds.

21 And the second is the chemical aggregation, which can
22 involve the breaking or formation of chemical bonds, for
23 example, sulfur-sulfur bond forming.

24 Q. Doctor, in terms of assessing or determining the
25 solubility of a protein, does it make any difference which of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 these mechanisms that Wang is describing caused the protein to
2 come out of the formulation?

3 A. No. It just matters the degree to which it's soluble
4 or not soluble; it comes out of solution.

5 Q. How does a scientist know how much of a protein stays
6 in solution under a particular set of conditions?

7 A. Well, in the extreme case, a scientist can, for
8 example, experiment or do experiments under certain conditions;
9 and if the solution gets cloudy, which one can see visually,
10 then it's come out of solution, it's insoluble, that part
11 that's cloudy.

12 But that's really an extreme case. Long before one
13 can visually see the cloudiness, we can use analytical
14 techniques, such as probing it with lasers and whatnot to
15 determine the degree of insolubility.

16 Q. What kinds of conditions are used in these tests of
17 solubility?

18 A. Well, the kind of conditions at which the protein
19 might be subjected to during its lifetime as a pharmaceutical
20 product, conditions such as shear, shaking, going through the
21 needle as we just talked about, and potential temperature
22 excursions.

23 MR. BERL: Your Honor, at this point I'm going to
24 start getting into the claims and Mylan's product. I think
25 Mylan has requested that the balance of the examination have a

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

BERNHARDT TROUT - DIRECT

1 sealed courtroom.

2 THE COURT: Understood.

3 MR. COPLAND: Yes, Your Honor. I discussed with
4 Mr. Berl, and he'll need to go back and forth repeatedly to
5 confidential information. The cross-examination will as well.
6 So we ask the courtroom be closed for the remainder.

7 THE COURT: Understood. Consistent with -- is there
8 any objection to that, Mr. Berl? I'm sorry.

9 MR. BERL: No objection.

10 THE COURT: Consistent with this Court's prior
11 protective order and our prior practice during this trial, I
12 would ask anyone who is not covered under that protective order
13 to step out of the courtroom at this point in time.

14 (The following proceedings (581/16 to 711/16) were
15 sealed and are filed under separate cover.)

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

THE COURT: I believe we're ready to hear from our next witness. If we are, go right ahead and hit play.

18

19

MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, I think we're all set to play this next deposition.

20

21

THE COURT: Thank you so much. Whenever you're ready, sir, you can go ahead and hit play. Thank you.

22

(Deposition of Vanessa Smith played.)

23

24

25

MR. GREGORY: And I believe that is the end of the video deposition testimony that we're prepared to present today. I'm happy to work with Mylan's counsel and the court

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 staff after the end of the day to figure out the exhibits that
2 need to be moved in.

3 THE COURT: Sure. That sounds acceptable to me.

4 Where are we at overall, then, today, Mr. Berl?

5 MR. BERL: Your Honor, plaintiffs rest their case in
6 chief.

7 THE COURT: That answered my question.

8 Counsel.

9 MS. MAZZOCHI: Good afternoon, Your Honor. This is
10 Deanne Mazzochi speaking on behalf of the Mylan and Biocon
11 defendants. At this time defendants move for entry of judgment
12 on partial findings of noninfringement on all asserted claims
13 pursuant to Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 52(c). Granting
14 this relief now would also streamline significantly the
15 invalidity portion of this case.

16 The defendants -- I also note that in the -- I'm
17 sorry. The defendants also move for entry of judgment on
18 partial findings for noninfringement as to all of the asserted
19 claims of the '572 patent, Claims 6 and 25; '601 patent,
20 Claims 11 and 19; and '865 patent, Claims 4, 7, 9, 11, and 14
21 to 17.

22 With regard to the asserted dosing patent claims,
23 first, the defendants respectfully move for judgment on partial
24 findings of no direct infringement on all asserted dosing
25 patent claims.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Regeneron has introduced no evidence at trial that
2 defendants will directly practice any of the claimed methods.
3 Regeneron's expert admitted that he was not contending that
4 defendants directly infringed. Regeneron thus has failed to
5 prove by a preponderance of the evidence that defendants will
6 directly infringe any asserted dosing patent claim.

7 Second, the defendants respectfully move for judgment
8 of partial findings of no induced infringement for all asserted
9 dosing patent claims. An active induced infringement requires
10 first a predicate act of direct infringement, and Regeneron's
11 expert has not satisfied Regeneron's burden of proof in that
12 regard.

13 All of the dosing patents' asserted claims require a
14 fixed-dosing schedule, including a specific number of monthly
15 doses followed by a very precise eight-week dosing schedule.

16 Regeneron has failed to prove by a preponderance of
17 the evidence that doctors in the real world actually do adhere
18 to this schedule, let alone by any appreciable degree, and
19 certainly not to the extent that this Court should be justified
20 in inferring a specific intent by the defendants to induce
21 doctors to follow this specific label -- I'm sorry -- this
22 specific method of treatment.

23 While Regeneron has -- and Regeneron also has not
24 thereby met its burden of proof to show that the defendants do,
25 in fact, have the requisite specific intent to induce

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 infringement of the claimed precise fixed-dosing regimen.

2 Regeneron has relied primarily on defendants'
3 Yesafili labeling, but their expert did admit that
4 noninfringing regimens such in the Yesafili labeling include,
5 for example, monthly dosing or every-eight-week dosing.
6 Dr. Csaky was unequivocal that doctors have their own
7 discretion to administer the drug at a dosing schedule of their
8 choice and their control.

9 In addition, the supposed real-world evidence that
10 Regeneron has presented with their expert having admitted that
11 he did not attempt to quantify any -- the number of
12 infringements that would be potentially in existing if the
13 product were approved -- what he presented that was tied to
14 actual medical records -- likewise cannot cause Regeneron to
15 meet their burden of proof because, again, even in the dosing
16 regimen that was designated as IAI 2q8, the dosing regimen does
17 not fall within the scope of the claims given the wide
18 variation that was permitted both on the, quote/unquote,
19 monthly schedule, which was allowed to be anywhere from three
20 weeks to five weeks, as well as a seven-week or nine-week
21 dosing interval.

22 Thus Regeneron has not met its burden of proof to
23 show evidence of direct infringement of each and every element
24 of the asserted dosing patent claims, which is required to
25 prove infringement, induced infringement under *Limelight*

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 *Networks, Inc., v. Akamai Technologies, Inc.*, 134 S.Ct. 2111,
2 2117 (2014), noting that inducement liability may arise if, but
3 only if, there is direct patent infringement.

4 And while the internal quotations are omitted, it
5 also was citing *Aro Manufacturing Company v. Convertible Top*
6 *Replacement Company*, 365 U.S. 336, 341 (1961), for that
7 premise.

8 Accordingly, the Regeneron has failed to prove, one,
9 that there will be actual direct infringers; two, that
10 defendants will actively encourage direct infringement; and,
11 three, that defendants have the requisite specific intent to
12 infringe, especially where, as here, that intent cannot be
13 inferred, given the overwhelming noninfringing uses of both
14 Eylea and the defendants' Yesafili product, the existence of
15 all of the noninfringing regimens in the label, which Dr. Csaky
16 admitted, which also can be accompanied by the physician's own
17 discretion and clinical judgment to make the choice of which
18 label indication to use.

19 Thus, Your Honor, the defendants respectfully move
20 under Rule 52(c) for a judgment of partial findings that all
21 asserted claims of the '572 and '601 patents are not directly
22 infringed by defendants and that defendants further do not
23 induce infringement under 35 U.S.C. Section 271.

24 With regard to the '845 formulation patent,
25 defendants also respectfully move for a judgment on partial

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 findings of no direct infringement with respect to the '865
2 formulation patent's asserted Claims 4, 7, 9, 11, and 14 to 17.

3 All of the '865 patent's asserted claims depend
4 directly or indirectly on independent Claim 1, which requires
5 a, quote, organic cosolvent element, as that term has been
6 construed by this Court.

7 Regeneron has failed to prove by a preponderance of
8 the evidence that defendants' Yesafili product includes the
9 required cosolvent.

10 More specifically, under Your Honor's claim
11 construction an organic cosolvent must increase the solubility
12 of the drug substance solute, which here is the VEGF antagonist
13 protein aflibercept.

14 We simply do not have that here. Plaintiffs have
15 only alleged that the polysorbate 20 may be, could, under
16 particular molecular model involving other products, could meet
17 this element.

18 The evidence you have heard thus far was no disputes
19 that the polysorbate 20 in Yesafili is a surfactant, a
20 surface-active agent. By name and by definition,
21 polysorbate 20 is acting as a stabilizing agent to protect the
22 protein.

23 Polysorbate 20 indisputably does not dissolve the
24 protein under this Court's claim construction, and Dr. Trout's
25 effort today to try to reconstrue your definition under what he

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 claimed was an understanding of the person of ordinary skill in
2 the art is improper.

3 Polysorbate 20 does not work in conjunction with
4 water to help dissolve aflibercept in the Yesafili formulation.
5 Because there is no evidence that the polysorbate 20 is
6 actually increasing solubility of the aflibercept protein in
7 Yesafili through the use of polysorbate 20, plaintiffs have
8 presented the Court with a theory that fundamentally is
9 unsupported and, in fact, contradicted by the very evidence it
10 presented in its case in chief on infringement.

11 First, you heard Dr. Trout explain that polysorbate
12 prevents aggregation and protein formulations. Assume that
13 that's true and accurate. It doesn't change the ultimate
14 analysis. Surfactants are well known in the art to be
15 stabilizing agents. Surface active agents that protect the
16 protein from denaturing or degrading and aggregation may be one
17 of those phenomena that can happen in a protein formulation.

18 Second, you heard Dr. Trout rely on data that
19 Regeneron's counsel characterized as the most important
20 document he was going to show you, but again, there are two
21 problems for Regeneron.

22 One, this most important document of plaintiff's
23 infringement theory presents data for a different formulation
24 that Mylan and Biocon do not use for Yesafili. No true
25 head-to-head comparison was done at the correct concentration

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 with the correct ingredients; and, ultimately, the data are
2 specifically for a formulation that uses the components of
3 Eylea, not the formulation components of Lucentis, which we
4 know Yesafili follows, which was that prior art model, not the
5 Eylea model.

6 Two, Dr. Trout's theory that inhibiting aggregation
7 somehow equals -- or perhaps he says effectively equals --
8 increasing solubility simply cannot bear any fruit on their
9 infringement analysis.

10 Why?

11 Because the actual data of the histidine-buffered
12 trehalose-stabilized formulation used in Yesafili indisputably
13 confirm that no aggregation occurred in that formulation, both
14 with and without the presence of polysorbate. That same data
15 also showed that the components in Eylea, however, do
16 aggregate.

17 Thus Dr. Trout's model was built on a fundamental
18 flaw. But even assuming Dr. Trout's theory, all he has
19 attempted to do is redefine the meaning of a cosolvent in
20 violation of your Court's *Markman* order. Thus a judgment of
21 noninfringement on partial findings is appropriate because
22 plaintiff has not proven and indeed cannot prove, given the
23 testimony of Dr. Hana Chang you heard and the Integrity Bio
24 report, that the Yesafili formulation is prone to aggregation
25 and thus needs the polysorbate to inhibit aggregation.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Furthermore, Your Honor, at the outset of this
2 litigation, Regeneron did assert a variety of claims that are
3 no longer asserted. So defendants also further respectfully
4 move for judgment on partial findings of no infringement for
5 all of those patents and claims that were asserted against the
6 defendants in the complaint that were supposed to be designated
7 for this part of the case and which are no longer asserted.

8 Thank you very much, Your Honor.

9 THE COURT: Thank you, Counsel.

10 Counsel.

11 MR. BERL: Good afternoon, Your Honor. I'm happy to
12 respond to as much of that as you'd like.

13 Obviously, Mylan has made its record of filing a
14 motion for partial findings. Actually, this was a nonwritten
15 motion that they've made here. Obviously, it's a bench trial.
16 We disagree with everything that Ms. Mazzochi just said.

17 THE COURT: Noted.

18 MR. BERL: I'm happy to explain why. Your Honor
19 listened to the evidence. We obviously went through the claims
20 in painstaking detail, explaining with expert testimony why
21 Mylan induces infringement of all of the asserted claims of the
22 method patent.

23 The notion that somehow not enough people will
24 actually practice the claim is legally irrelevant. This is a
25 claim of infringement under 35 U.S.C. 271(e). The issue here

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 is Mylan's label and whether Mylan's label induces
2 infringement. That's the issue, always has been the issue from
3 the Warner-Lambert case, which is the seminal case on induced
4 infringement under 271(e) in the filing of an FDA application,
5 continuing down through the *AstraZeneca v. Apotex* case, and all
6 of the inquiries that Ms. Mazzochi rested on are essentially
7 not relevant to the proper legal question before the Court.

8 Those questions before the Court were repeatedly
9 answered by Dr. Csaky over and over and over again. You saw
10 those two questions that were on the screen where he said yes
11 and yes to each one. Claim by claim, limitation by limitation,
12 this infringement case was set forth and made convincingly.
13 And crediting that evidence, there can be no doubt but that a
14 case of infringement was made.

15 With respect to the '865 patent, Dr. Trout just got
16 off the stand, and you've now heard from multiple witnesses who
17 have experience in protein formulation that the whole notion
18 that Mylan is trying to advance to avoid infringement in this
19 case, that something has to dissolve a protein as if it's some
20 kind of sugar that you put in water and that that's what a
21 solvent means in this context, is just wrong. That's not what
22 anyone thinks. That's not the reality of the world.

23 And so Mylan is trying to reinterpret this claim to
24 be a claim that never could be infringed because nothing
25 solubilizes a protein under their definition, nothing is a

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 solvent under their definition, not even water.

2 And so Mylan basically advances two noninfringement
3 arguments, it appears. One, that Your Honor somehow held that
4 you have to dissolve a protein as if it's some sugar that
5 you're dissolving in water. That's just not true. The
6 evidence shows that that's not true.

7 And the second proposition that they appear to be
8 advancing is that we have to show that there's aggregation and
9 that, if you have something in solution just sitting on a
10 shelf, that you can't increase its solubility.

11 That's not right either. We heard repeatedly that
12 solubility is a function of temperature and pressure so that,
13 if a formulation comes out of solution, for example, when you
14 agitate it and then you add polysorbate and it doesn't happen,
15 you've obviously increased the solubility. You're keeping
16 things in solution.

17 The notion that the documents didn't show that,
18 respectfully, is not true. What Mylan's doing is they're
19 asking for judgment because they have no evidence on the other
20 side. Their expert failed to address the most important
21 evidence in the case, their own testing of their BLA.

22 You don't have to take it from me; you don't have to
23 take it from Dr. Trout. Their own documents said in black and
24 white what it was attributed to, what was going on with the
25 formulation when they didn't have the polysorbate in it. And

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 it said it -- I'm happy to repeat it even though the
2 courtroom's open -- but it said that it's protecting --

3 MR. RAKOCZY: Can we --

4 THE COURT: I've seen that evidence.

5 MR. BERL: So it cannot possibly be the case that,
6 when you keep things in solution, you are not increasing the
7 solubility. Their case requires someone to hold otherwise,
8 which, honestly, makes little sense on this current record or
9 given the facts of science that are at issue here.

10 So again, I'm happy to answer any questions, but
11 given the posture of the case, we think that any judgment at
12 this point or any other judgment with respect to
13 noninfringement is completely unwarranted.

14 THE COURT: Understood. Thank you, Counsel.

15 It's your motion, Counsel. You get last word if
16 you'd like one.

17 MS. MAZZOCHI: Just very briefly, Your Honor. We do
18 believe that the case law has been clear out of the federal
19 circuit, and it was actually in some of the cases we cited in
20 our summary judgment brief in connection with the dosing
21 patents that, if the doctors are allowed to exercise their
22 clinical judgment under the label, your label can describe an
23 infringing use; but if it's not a required, mandatory use and
24 the doctors have the option to exercise their clinical judgment
25 to use another method, then that is not enough for them to be

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 able to meet their burden to prove induced infringement.

2 With regard to the '865 patent cosolvent, Your Honor,
3 what -- if I had to basically colloquialize what it seems like
4 Regeneron's argument is is that, well, once you've decided to
5 get married, if you go out and you renew your vows, that
6 somehow means it's adding something to the scope of your legal
7 obligations as a husband and wife. You're really not.

8 They're talking about -- the whole point of a
9 cosolvent is that it is doing something more to the
10 formulation. Under the Court's claim construction, it has to
11 be increasing, helping to increase the -- I apologize. I don't
12 have the construction in front of me; so I don't want to
13 misquote it. Mr. Salmen will kill me if I do. Fine. He won't
14 kill me. He'll chide he if I do, mercilessly.

15 THE COURT: I can't do anything about that.

16 MS. MAZZOCHI: But the ultimate point, Your Honor, is
17 that what they're basically trying to do is suggest that the
18 cosolvent doesn't -- their idea of a cosolvent is that it can
19 be there and not do anything, and if it's not actually causing
20 the formulation to do anything new, if it's not actually
21 increasing the solubility of the aflibercept, then it's not
22 acting as a cosolvent because the whole point is it's supposed
23 to be helping the water to dissolve.

24 And, furthermore, this notion too that they've been
25 saying is that, oh, it's not like sugar that you put in your

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 coffee, well, you can have proteins that are -- you heard it
2 from Dr. Furfine earlier. He said, yeah, you can have
3 lyophilized proteins, where they're proteins, they're solids.
4 Then you can use water to help dissolve them, and sometimes you
5 might want to use a cosolvent to help them dissolve.

6 That is not what we have here because it is
7 undisputed that Mylan's product starts in water, stays in
8 water, and it doesn't need any type of dissolution aid in the
9 form of a cosolvent to either get it there or keep it there.

10 So that's why again --

11 THE COURT: This is that chiding in writing?

12 MS. MAZZOCHI: No, but I --

13 THE COURT: Sorry, Counsel. I couldn't resist.

14 MS. MAZZOCHI: No, but again, Your Honor, I think
15 that the ultimate point is is that they have only asserted
16 literal infringement in this case, and it sounds like what
17 they're trying to do is say, well, a surfactant is really
18 equivalent to how a cosolvent works. And that's not the way in
19 which they have presented this case. That would be a
20 completely different theory that they have not raised in their
21 contentions, did not do in their expert reports, which requires
22 a different legal standard.

23 So they're basically to have their cake and eat it
24 too, saying this is something that's equivalent without
25 actually meeting the standards of the doctrine of equivalents,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 and that's not appropriate either.

2 So with that, Your Honor, that's why we believe
3 judgment is appropriate.

4 THE COURT: No, understood. Thank you. Thank you,
5 Counsel.

6 Under 52(c) the Court is going to decline to render
7 judgment at this point until the close of the evidence,
8 considering the evidence the Court has heard, the context of a
9 bench trial, of course, and the counterclaims and the rest, I
10 think that's the appropriate step at this juncture.

11 I'm going to make an assumption, and make it a strong
12 assumption, that Mylan would like to call its first witness
13 tomorrow.

14 MR. RAKOCZY: That would be correct, Your Honor.

15 MS. MAZZOCHI: And, actually, Your Honor, two quick
16 housekeeping matters that you did mention this morning.

17 There is an issue with regard to Regeneron has made
18 the assertion that Dr. Rabinow's obviousness combinations were
19 not set forth in his report. Because Dr. Rabinow is one of the
20 witnesses we would like to try to get done in the next day or
21 two, we're happy to actually provide the Court with the
22 evidence that, yes, it is, in fact, in his expert reports -- it
23 was even disclosed in our original contentions -- so that we
24 can get that issue resolved because, if there is going to
25 actually be a change to the scope of his opinions, we'd

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 certainly rather know that sooner rather than later. But we
2 don't think that it is.

3 And I'm happy to turn the floor over to Mr. Hunt to
4 confirm that for you if you would like.

5 THE COURT: I'd like, sir, if you wouldn't mind
6 filing that sometime this evening or sometime tomorrow morning
7 in response to Regeneron's motion. And it would be my
8 strongest suggestion that a copy of the particular disclosure
9 of that combination again of the Fraser, Dix, Lucentis, which
10 is the Shams and Gaudreault prior art along with Liu where that
11 was previously disclosed.

12 And I'd also touch upon, assuming it has been
13 previously disclosed -- well, I'll leave it at that at this
14 point, but we'll receive that in writing.

15 MS. MAZZOCHI: In addition, Your Honor, the
16 defendants were planning on also playing the deposition
17 testimony. I was hoping we were going to have time today; I
18 think we'll do a different one so we can get done roughly
19 before 5:00. But it's the deposition -- the 30(b)(6)
20 deposition testimony of Karen Chu. So here, again, that was
21 part of the letter that went to you this morning. I don't know
22 if you want to take that up tomorrow or --

23 THE COURT: We're going to take that up tomorrow.
24 I've not had a chance to digest that. And in all candor, I'm
25 making an assumption -- and I don't know who all participated

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 in Ms. Chu's deposition. I'm making an assumption that there
2 was no clean break between the 30(b)(6) deposition and her
3 testimony as a fact witness. Is that correct?

4 MR. GREGORY: I don't think that is correct, Your
5 Honor.

6 Your Honor, part of our problem here is that we think
7 that, while certainly the lines can be blurry in many 30(b)(6)
8 depositions, as you well know, between what is individual
9 capacity testimony and 30(b)(6) testimony, this is actually one
10 of the rare ones where it's pretty clear. I'm not sure if
11 Mr. Schliesske can put it on the screen for me.

12 THE COURT: So there were two separate depositions of
13 Ms. Chu, one where she served as a designee? No? I'm going to
14 stop assuming. Tell me what happened.

15 MR. GREGORY: So there's one deposition, Your Honor.
16 I believe it was December 16, 2022. We're looking here at, I
17 believe, page 83 of her deposition transcript, and
18 Mr. Schliesske can put it on the screen.

19 So you see there's a question from -- right before
20 this there's a question from Mylan's counsel.

21 Regeneron's counsel, Mr. Oberwetter, says, "Is this a
22 30(b)(6) question?"

23 Mylan's counsel replies, "This is just her," i.e.,
24 individual capacity.

25 Ms. Oberwetter replies, "Do you want to tell me when

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 you go back," that is to 30(b)(6).

2 THE COURT: The changing of the hats.

3 MR. GREGORY: Exactly.

4 And then lest there be any confusion, Ms. Oberwetter
5 asks again -- this is Regeneron's counsel -- "I'm sorry. Are
6 you going to tell me went you go back to asking 30(b)(6)
7 questions?" And Mylan's counsel says, "Sure."

8 She does not go back to asking 30(b)(6) questions
9 until approximately page 113 of the transcript. And if
10 Mr. Schliesske can put that up. And you see there she flags
11 that we're moving back into 30(b)(6) testimony.

12 The next break appears at -- there's just two more --
13 page 123 of the deposition transcript. And, again, there's a
14 question preceding this. And Ms. Oberwetter says, "Is that a
15 30(b)(6) question?" And again Mylan's counsel says, "That's
16 her"; i.e., this is individual capacity.

17 And Ms. Oberwetter says, "Can you tell me when you go
18 back to asking 30(b)(6) questions?" And again Mylan's counsel
19 says unequivocally, "Sure."

20 And she does not go back to asking 30(b)(6) questions
21 until page 273 of the transcript, where there's a question and
22 Ms. Oberwetter says, "Object to form, foundation." And if
23 we're back into 30(b)(6) questions; she poses a 30(b)(6)
24 objection on scope.

25 So this is one of these situations where we actually

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 have a pretty clear delineation in the transcript of what's
2 personal capacity, individual capacity, and what is 30(b)(6).

3 Now, the problem we have here is that they have
4 represented they are only trying to choose 30(b)(6) testimony.
5 That's the only exception to both the rules and the argument,
6 arguably, the joint pretrial memoranda, which was heavily
7 negotiated by the parties and says that "The parties agree that
8 they shall not be permitted to play deposition testimony from
9 witnesses who are testifying live."

10 Now, frankly, I think that should control above all
11 else. That was negotiated in the context of the federal
12 rules --

13 THE COURT: Even more so than Federal Rules of Civil
14 Procedure.

15 MR. GREGORY: We negotiated with that in the
16 background, Your Honor. But setting that aside, if their point
17 is that this is not Ms. Chu's testimony but rather Regeneron's
18 and they should be allowed to play it, they should only, at the
19 very most, be allowed to play Regeneron's corporate testimony.
20 And here we have clear representations from counsel that we
21 relied on, and more importantly that the witness relied upon,
22 when she was giving these answers, she was answering she, I'm
23 sure, believed on behalf of herself, not Regeneron.

24 Now --

25 THE COURT: What position does Ms. Chu hold with

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Regeneron?

2 MR. GREGORY: I should have addressed that at the
3 front, Your Honor. I apologize.

4 Ms. Chu -- her exact title is escaping me. She is
5 within the clinical development team. And we are bringing her
6 next week. You will hear from her live. They'll have the
7 opportunity to take her personal capacity, individual capacity
8 testimony at that point, and we've told them that.

9 But they're seeking to play over an hour of her
10 testimony today, as you saw in the letter, large swaths of
11 which fall within the breaks that I just showed you where it's
12 just personal.

13 Now, and my final point, Your Honor, and I hate to
14 have to break this up, but I think I'm compelled to do so.

15 The joint letter that went in this morning was not a
16 joint letter. That letter was served to the Court or submitted
17 to the Court without Regeneron having the chance to first
18 review it and approve it and sign off on it.

19 And now setting aside whether or not it's improper or
20 from a procedural standpoint -- I can set that aside. The
21 problem here is that it's substantively misleading in a couple
22 of respects that we could have corrected had we had a chance to
23 actually look at it. It's misleading in the fact that they
24 kind of marched through various pieces of her testimony and
25 made arguments about, well, this relates to Topic 17 and this

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 relates to Topic 4.

2 But, again, we would have -- if we knew they were
3 going to do that and we had seen the final letter, we would
4 have showed you in the letter what we just showed you before,
5 the clean breaks in her testimony where they are just explicit
6 that they're doing personal individual capacity, not 30(b)(6).

7 The other respect with which this is misleading is
8 that one of the documents attached to the letter that went in
9 this morning that we did not have a chance to review and that
10 we did not know would go in with it was a list of the purported
11 topics on which they designated Ms. Chu.

12 So even if the Court is inclined to go designation by
13 designation -- and, again, we don't think you have to because
14 we have these clean breaks in her testimony. But if the Court
15 were inclined to do that, they put in this list of purported
16 topics, but what they don't tell the Court is that that list
17 was subject to a 25-piece -- 25-page piece of correspondence
18 from Regeneron to Mylan within the days before Ms. Chu's
19 testimony explaining all the problems that we had about the
20 scope and the overbreadth of the 30(b)(6) topics, the ways that
21 we felt they should be limited, and then designating Ms. Chu
22 subject to those objections. And you don't have any of that
23 record.

24 So, respectfully, Your Honor, I think there are a
25 number of problems with their attempts to play Ms. Chu's

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 testimony. At the very least I think this Court should not
2 allow them to play individual capacity testimony from Ms. Chu
3 who will be coming live next week.

4 THE COURT: Counsel.

5 MS. MAZZOCHI: Yes. First, Your Honor, this is -- it
6 was precisely my concern that Regeneron just wanted a standing
7 objection as to whether something was 30(b)(6) testimony or
8 not. I declined that.

9 At page 52 of the deposition testimony,
10 Ms. Oberwetter specifically said, "I would like a running
11 objection."

12 I said, No. I want to know when you're going to
13 object that this is something that is not her -- you know,
14 she's not speaking on behalf of Regeneron precisely so I then
15 have the opportunity to know and follow up on that.

16 Now --

17 THE COURT: Why not two separate depositions, though?
18 It makes this incredibly clean.

19 MS. MAZZOCHI: Well, I can't answer that, Your Honor.
20 I mean, I would have loved to have had two days with Ms. Chu,
21 but they were only offering one. So to try to --

22 THE COURT: Subpoenas and the rest. She's a
23 high-ranking official within the plaintiff's hierarchy.

24 I'm sorry. Go ahead.

25 MS. MAZZOCHI: Sure. But, Your Honor, I do want to

1 say this, that at the point where she said, oh, will you tell
2 me when you're seeing to go back to 30(b)(6) testimony, yes, in
3 the very next question, I said, "What is your understanding?"
4 relating to the exclusion criteria in the VIEW 1-VIEW 2
5 studies, asked her one more follow-up question, then asked the
6 question of Regeneron. "Did Regeneron ever consider putting
7 the black box warning in this?"

8 So two questions later I asked her a question of what
9 is Regeneron's position on one of these issues?

10 THE COURT: How many questions after that are we
11 going back to individual fact witness capacity?

12 MS. MAZZOCHI: What I was trying to do was, if I was
13 asking her a question that was in your individual capacity, I
14 would say "do you have any personal knowledge" or "in your
15 individual capacity," and then there were many instances where
16 I would -- like are you aware of this change versus what is
17 your understanding -- so page 131: "Was it your understanding
18 that Regeneron was attempting to file patent applications on
19 all of these methods?"

20 So I was clearly, I believed, attempting to elicit
21 what was Regeneron's position. And I understand, Your Honor --
22 so that is replete throughout all of these pages that they're
23 complaining about is not -- somehow not Regeneron testimony.

24 And, furthermore, Your Honor, if we're going to start
25 doing this, she was designated for a whole lot of topics. She

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 was designated on conception and reduction to practice,
2 which -- of the '601 and '572 patents. So she's not a named
3 inventor; it was Dr. Yancopoulos. They designated her on that.

4 A lot of the documents that we are putting into
5 evidence do, in fact, relate to some of those conception issues
6 because they're going to influence the priority date analysis
7 that may have to come up with regard to some of the claims in
8 the patent and whether they can swear back to one of their
9 earlier references.

10 She was designated to talk about the clinical studies
11 and investigations. So a lot of -- again, that is a large
12 amount of what she was designated to testify to.

13 So I believed I was asking questions in her corporate
14 capacity, and because I had told Ms. Oberwetter I was not going
15 to agree to a standing objection, I expected her to object if
16 she wanted to say "that's not Regeneron's corporate position"
17 because Ms. Oberwetter is in the best position to know if what
18 she's saying is a position Regeneron wants to take or not. I'm
19 not in that position.

20 THE COURT: You drafted the designations, and it was
21 noticed as a 30(b)(6).

22 MS. MAZZOCHI: Yes.

23 THE COURT: She was produced as a designee. There is
24 no question in my mind that under Rule 32 Mylan may use any
25 30(b)(6) testimony for any purpose during this trial. As an

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 adverse party designee, that that is not even up for dispute.

2 The question becomes, particularly because Regeneron
3 has represented to this Court repeatedly now Ms. Chu will
4 appear to testify during this trial -- I don't think she's
5 considered unavailable under the rules as to whether testimony
6 in her own individual fact witness capacity can be used from
7 this -- I think even the transcript said hybrid deposition.

8 And so you-all need to get together this evening and
9 figure out, line by line, which goes in which bucket because
10 the 30(b)(6) bucket, Mylan may use for any purpose during
11 trial, without question. I'll note the objection. But I think
12 Rule 32 is clear on that.

13 I would anticipate, frankly, under 52(c) not
14 rendering any judgment on behalf of anybody until the close of
15 evidence in this case given the significant factual disputes
16 that I believe were apparent in the cross-motions for summary
17 judgment and remain apparent even though we've only heard the
18 plaintiff's case in chief at this point.

19 So I guess my ultimate question is what is the
20 practical difference if Mylan waits until Ms. Chu is called to
21 question her then?

22 MS. MAZZOCHI: The practical difference -- there's
23 two, Your Honor. Number one is we did ask Regeneron -- so let
24 me take a step back.

25 Originally, Ms. Chu was not even on our radar screen.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 She was on a may-call list. All of the indications that we had
2 had from Regeneron is that they were not going to be calling
3 her live. It was only about a week ago-ish -- I don't want to
4 be held to a specific date -- that they decided they were going
5 to call her live.

6 We don't know why. We asked what would be the scope
7 of what she was going to be testifying to? Because, again,
8 what we're worried about is that we have the adverse admissions
9 against them. They're going to have her come in and try to
10 change something, and now we're going to have to have a
11 cross-examination that's going to be twice as long because
12 we're going to have to be -- is she -- was this answer given in
13 her personal capacity and can I impeach her with her testimony
14 or can I -- am I doing this in a 30(b)(6) capacity where I can
15 actually just play the testimony?

16 I, frankly, believe it's going to be a lot more
17 efficient and time-saving if we do our deposition designations
18 and, if there's a particular issue where they want to say, No,
19 this is something that we are 100 percent clear; this was her
20 alone and she couldn't possibly fit into one of the topics
21 within their letter, okay, I'm happy to have that discussion.
22 But they won't even tell us what she's going to be here to
23 testify about.

24 THE COURT: You should have asked her that during her
25 deposition. That's the point of fact discovery.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 MS. MAZZOCHI: I did. I asked her --

2 THE COURT: Then you can cross her on it. You can
3 impeach her and the rest.

4 You all have to get together this evening and work
5 through this list and see what's left in dispute. We'll handle
6 it one at a time in the morning of whatever's left.

7 30(b)(6) testimony, Mylan may use under Rule 32 for
8 any purpose during the course of this trial. Non-30(b)(6)
9 testimony is a different story. Counsel needs to get the
10 buckets straight which is which, and then we'll deal with the
11 personal testimony issue tomorrow morning.

12 MS. MAZZOCHI: That's fine, Your Honor. Thank you.

13 THE COURT: Thank you.

14 MR. GREGORY: Thank you, Your Honor.

15 MS. MAZZOCHI: Then with that, Your Honor, our first
16 witness, who we would also like to call by deposition
17 testimony, is Abby Cahn, who is a marketing individual within
18 Regeneron.

19 THE COURT: How long is that?

20 MS. MAZZOCHI: I think it's about 35 minutes.

21 THE COURT: I'm going to exercise Article III
22 privilege, and we're going to play that tomorrow morning.

23 MS. MAZZOCHI: I do have a shorter one.

24 THE COURT: Actually, no. I have a summer league
25 high school basketball game up the road that I have, with all

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 due respect to everyone in this room, more interest in at this
2 point. You all are welcome to attend.

3 We will hit play on whichever one you'd like to start
4 with tomorrow morning, Counsel.

5 MS. MAZZOCHI: Then, Your Honor, what we may try to
6 do then because, as we had informed counsel, Dr. Albini does
7 have some scheduling issues. We may call Dr. Albini because we
8 do want to make sure that he can get on the stand tomorrow, off
9 the stand, and doesn't have to be held over for any meaningful
10 period on Friday.

11 THE COURT: That's fine. And then if that gives you
12 all more time to work through the issues with Ms. Chu's
13 testimony, that's fine by me. I'm not eager to start that --

14 MS. MAZZOCHI: I understand.

15 THE COURT: -- first thing; so if there's a witness
16 you'd like to call first, that's fine, other than Ms. Chu.
17 That will be fine.

18 MS. MAZZOCHI: We'll work on that, Your Honor. Thank
19 you very much.

20 THE COURT: The best of luck to you all working
21 through that. I'm going to go watch my Fighting Hawks of
22 University High in their summer league game instead.

23 Anything else we need to take up this afternoon,
24 then?

25 You've got the mic, Counsel. Go ahead.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 MS. MAZZOCHI: Not that I'm aware of, but Mr. Rakoczy
2 did stand up. So if he's got something in mind, I'll defer to
3 his judgment.

4 MR. RAKOCZY: Nothing, Your Honor.

5 THE COURT: Understood.

6 MR. BERL: Nothing from plaintiff, Your Honor.

7 THE COURT: I don't mean to rush anybody for tip-off.
8 I've got plenty of time to make tip.

9 Okay. Nothing?

10 You guys have plenty to do this evening. We'll
11 reconvene tomorrow morning at 9:30 and go from there.

12 You all have a pleasant evening. Thank you very
13 much.

14 (Proceedings concluded at 4:50 p.m.)

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

CERTIFICATE

1
2 I, Cindy L. Knecht, Registered Professional Reporter and
3 Official Reporter of the United States District Court for the
4 Northern District of West Virginia, do hereby certify that the
5 foregoing is a true and correct transcript of the proceedings
6 had in the above-styled action on June 14, 2023, as reported by
7 me in stenotypy.

8 I certify that the transcript fees and format comply with
9 those prescribed by the Court and the Judicial Conference of
10 the United States.

11 Given under my hand this 14th day of June 2023.

12 /s/Cindy L. Knecht

13 _____
14 Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR
15 Official reporter, United States
16 District Court for the Northern
17 District of West Virginia
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
NORTHERN DISTRICT OF WEST VIRGINIA

Regeneron Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

Plaintiff,

VS.

CIVIL ACTION NO.

1:22-cv-61

Mylan Pharmaceuticals, Inc., and

Volume 4

Biocon Biologics,

Defendants.

- - -

Proceedings had in the bench trial of the above-styled
action on June 15, 2023, before Honorable Thomas S. Klee
District Judge, at Clarksburg, West Virginia.

- - -

APPEARANCES:

On behalf of the Plaintiff:

David I. Berl
Ellen E. Oberwetter
Kathryn S. Kayali
Williams & Connolly, LLP
680 Maine Avenue, SW
Washington, D.C. 20024
202.434.5000

Andrew E. Goldsmith
Kellogg, Hansen, Todd, Figel & Frederick, PLLC
1615 M. Street NW, Suite 400
Washington, DC 20036
202.326.7945

APPEARANCES CONTINUED ON NEXT PAGE

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 On behalf of the Plaintiff, continued:

2 Steven Robert Ruby
3 Carey, Douglas, Kessler & Ruby, PLLC
4 797 Virginia Street, East, Suite 901
5 Charleston, WV 25301
6 304.345.1234

7 Petra Scamborova
8 Regeneron Pharmaceuticals, Inc.
9 777 Old Saw Mill River Road
10 Tarrytown, NY 10591-6717
11 914.847.7611

12 On behalf of the Defendant:

13 Deanne M. Mazzochi
14 William A. Rakoczy
15 Heinz J. Salmen
16 Eric R. Hunt
17 Lauren M. Lesko
18 Neil B. McLaughlin
19 Rakoczy, Molino, Mazzochi & Siwik, LLP
20 6 W. Hubbard Street, Suite 500
21 Chicago, IL 60654
22 312.527.2157

23 Gordon H. Copland
24 William J. O'Brien
25 Steptoe & Johnson
400 White Oaks Blvd.
Bridgeport, WV 26330
304.933.8162

Proceedings recorded utilizing realtime translation.
Transcript produced by computer-aided transcription.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Thursday Morning Session,
2 June 15, 2023, 9:30 a.m.

3 - - -

4 THE COURT: We convene for day four of trial. Good
5 morning, everyone.

6 Everyone's curious, the University High Hawks played
7 well yesterday, and rising junior combo guard Noah Kleeh at 12
8 and 18 points in two games yesterday. So summer league is off
9 to a good start. And while sitting at the Marion County
10 Armory, I was reading the Federal Circuit's thoughts on many
11 things as well.

12 Okay. Let me ask this initial question so we can
13 most efficiently use our time today. What witnesses does Mylan
14 plan to call first?

15 MR. McLAUGHLIN: We plan to call Dr. Thomas Albini
16 first.

17 THE COURT: Outstanding. Are there any issues with
18 Dr. Albini that we need to take up before he testifies that
19 anyone's aware of at this point?

20 MR. McLAUGHLIN: None that I'm aware of.

21 THE COURT: Counsel.

22 MS. OBERWETTER: No, Your Honor.

23 THE COURT: Outstanding. Let's do that.

24 Yes, Counsel.

25 MR. HUNT: Your Honor, just a brief administrative

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 matter. Thank you for taking care of the updating us on the
2 Hawks. I was going to check in on that.

3 With regard to Dr. Rabinow, we have an outstanding
4 motion to exclude. Defendants filed an opposition, I suppose
5 early this morning.

6 THE COURT: Yes.

7 MR. HUNT: In the event that the Court is prepared to
8 take up that issue, I think it would be beneficial to the
9 parties and most notably the defendants to assist in witness
10 preparation. So if there's a particular time that the Court
11 would be willing to take that up today, it would be much
12 appreciated.

13 THE COURT: Why don't we do that -- because
14 Dr. Albin has a travel issue. Is that correct? Or travel
15 schedule, I should say, not issues.

16 Hopefully, Doctor, wherever you are, you don't have
17 issues, but I know you have a travel schedule.

18 Let's take that up at morning break or so, and we'll
19 go from there.

20 MR. HUNT: Appreciate it. Thank you, Your Honor.

21 THE COURT: Yes, ma'am.

22 MS. MAZZOCHI: And, Your Honor, the additional
23 administrative matter to bring up has to do with the deposition
24 designations for Karen Chu. So one of the things that we do
25 have -- I'm happy to hand it up to Your Honor -- is we actually

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 went through --

2 THE COURT: I believe I have that.

3 MS. MAZZOCHI: What got filed was the -- that was our
4 letter that we had previously sent where we -- under the
5 pretrial order where we had specified this was Regeneron's
6 objection; this is ours.

7 In response to your instructions yesterday, we did
8 have a meet-and-confer. My understanding is that Regeneron's
9 position is that they believe we had an agreement that,
10 therefore, all of Ms. Chu's testimony was converted from
11 30(b)(6) even if it fell within the notice topics to 30(b)(1).
12 We obviously disagree with that position.

13 So what we -- we do have a copy of the transcript
14 where we basically have gone through and marked these are the
15 different --

16 THE COURT: I have the color-coded -- red, green,
17 yellow. I've not had a chance to review that. So we're going
18 to put a pin in that.

19 MS. MAZZOCHI: I just wanted to know if there was
20 a -- because, again, we were hoping we could play Ms. Chu's
21 deposition testimony today as a 30(b)(6) witness. So I didn't
22 know if that was already something you'd like to take up --

23 THE COURT: We will when we get to it.

24 MR. GREGORY: I'm not -- not seeking to argue this
25 right now, just want to clarify.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 THE COURT: Not going to, but go ahead.

2 MR. GREGORY: The deposition transcript that I
3 believe you have is actually one from Regeneron. I think it's
4 probably very similar to the one that Mylan's counsel has
5 prepared. We received the email request this morning for those
6 transcripts.

7 We have a machine time limitation on the small
8 printer across the hall. We're running copies. I believe we
9 have provided the Court with two. The next one out of the
10 printer will go to Mylan's counsel. The fourth one will be
11 mine.

12 THE COURT: Understood.

13 MS. MAZZOCHI: Your Honor, how about to the extent
14 let's make sure everybody's got copies so nobody's surprised.
15 I'll give this to counsel.

16 Your Honor, how many copies would you like?

17 THE COURT: Two, please.

18 MS. MAZZOCHI: Thank you, Your Honor.

19 THE COURT: I know we've got some pins on things to
20 deal with. We will take them as they come.

21 Mylan may call its first witness.

22 MR. McLAUGHLIN: Your Honor, I believe we have some
23 binders. Permission to approach to pass out those binders,
24 documents Dr. Albin is going to be relying upon.

25 THE COURT: Granted.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

THOMAS A. ALBINI, MD - DIRECT

1 MR. McLAUGHLIN: Good morning, Your Honor. Neil
2 McLaughlin on behalf of Mylan Pharmaceuticals, Inc., and Biocon
3 Biologics, Inc. Biocon/Mylan would like to call Dr. Thomas
4 Albini as its first witness in its invalidity case.

5 THE COURT: Good morning, Doctor, sir. If you want
6 to make your way to the front of the courtroom.

7 **THOMAS A. ALBINI, MD, DEFENDANTS' WITNESS, SWORN**

8 THE COURT: Thank you, Doctor. Once you're seated
9 and comfortable, sir, if you wouldn't mind adjusting that
10 microphone. Don't worry; you can't break it.

11 THE WITNESS: Okay.

12 THE COURT: Does everyone have all their binders,
13 slides, and the rest?

14 If you're settled, Counsel.

15 MR. McLAUGHLIN: Thank you, Your Honor.

16 DIRECT EXAMINATION

17 BY MR. McLAUGHLIN:

18 Q. Good morning, Dr. Albini. Can you please state your
19 full name for the record.

20 A. Thomas Arno Albini.

21 Q. You're here testifying on behalf of Biocon and Mylan,
22 correct?

23 A. That is correct.

24 Q. Did you prepare demonstrative slides to assist the
25 Court with your testimony today?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

THOMAS A. ALBINI, MD - DIRECT

1 A. That's correct.

2 Q. And looking at the screen -- this is DDX 6 -- are
3 these the slides that you prepared?

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. So, Dr. Albin, I'd like to first talk about your
6 qualifications and experience that are relevant to this case.

7 What is your area of expertise?

8 A. I am a vitreoretinal surgeon who, among other things,
9 treats patients with angiogenic eye disorders on a routine
10 basis. And I've been doing that now for over 15 years as
11 faculty at the University of Miami Bascom Palmer Eye Institute.

12 Q. Could you describe your academic experience that led
13 to your eventual appointment to Bascom Palmer Eye Institute.

14 A. I finished medical school in 1999 at Johns Hopkins
15 University in Baltimore. I then went to Los Angeles to the
16 University of Southern California Doheny Eye Institute, where I
17 finished a three-year residency in ophthalmology. I also
18 undertook a one-year fellowship in intraocular inflammation and
19 ocular pathology.

20 Subsequent to that, I went to the Cullen Eye
21 Institute at the Baylor College of Medicine in Houston, Texas,
22 where I undertook two years of training as a fellow in
23 vitreoretinal surgery.

24 And immediately subsequent to that, I was hired as an
25 assistant professor at Bascom Palmer, University of Miami.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

THOMAS A. ALBINI, MD - DIRECT

1 Approximately six, seven years later, I was promoted to
2 associate professor. And back in 2018 I was promoted to a full
3 clinical professor of ophthalmology at Bascom Palmer.

4 Q. You made a reference to the term "vitreoretinal."

5 Can you describe for the Court what vitreoretinal
6 disorders are?

7 A. Vitreoretinal disorders are a number of diseases
8 within the back part of the eye behind the lens involving
9 surgery and medical -- and/or medical treatment of the retina
10 and the nearby tissues in the back of the eye.

11 So these would be things that people might have heard
12 of, like retinal detachments on the surgical side, epiretinal
13 membranes, and on the medical side, most of the diseases that
14 we'll be talking about, such as macular degeneration and
15 diabetic macular edema.

16 Q. And looking at the next slide, Slide 3 of DDX 6, can
17 you tell the Court a little bit about your experience working
18 as a medical doctor in the field of vitreoretinal disorders.

19 A. Sure. So as I mentioned, I started as an assistant
20 professor back in 2006. I've been a staff ophthalmologist at a
21 fully equipped eye hospital, the Anne Bates Leach Eye Hospital,
22 and at Jackson Memorial Hospital, which is the county health
23 system at University of Miami.

24 Since 2016 I've been codirector of the vitreoretinal
25 surgery fellowship, and then in 2018 I was promoted to full

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 professor of clinical ophthalmology.

2 As of this morning I have decided to become the
3 medical director of the retinal division within Bascom Palmer
4 Eye Institute.

5 Q. Congratulations.

6 Now, turning to the -- your next slide, Slide 4, can
7 you describe some of the things that you do on a day-to-day
8 basis in your roles at Bascom Palmer?

9 A. We have a number of educational conferences for
10 fellows and surgical and medical retina. I routinely
11 participate in those. I have fellows and residents who are
12 with me in clinic virtually every time I'm in clinic. And part
13 of my responsibilities are not only to manage patients as best
14 I can but also to help educate younger doctors who are becoming
15 vitreoretinal specialists themselves.

16 I also have fellows with me in the operating room,
17 either watching me operate or me watching them operate, and
18 that's also on a routine basis. And I've been doing that for
19 years.

20 Of course, my primary emphasis is on diagnosing and
21 treating vitreoretinal diseases in patients. I have a very
22 busy clinical load. I see somewhere between 4,000 and 5,000
23 patient visits per year, and I operate every week.

24 And as part of those responsibilities, I administer a
25 lot of vitreal anti-VEGF agents such as the ones that we'll be

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

THOMAS A. ALBINI, MD - DIRECT

1 discussing the rest of this testimony.

2 Q. And turning to the next slide, can you describe some
3 of the other contributions and roles that you have within the
4 vitreoretinal specialist community.

5 A. I've participated in a lot of national and
6 international societies, professional societies, within retina
7 and ophthalmology. I've been given the Senior Achievement
8 Award by the American Academy of Ophthalmology, the Senior
9 Honor Award by the American Society of Retina Specialists. And
10 these awards reflect scientific contributions that I've made to
11 the meetings over the years.

12 I'm a member of The Retina Society and serve on the
13 nominations committee for The Retina Society.

14 I'm a member of The Macula Society, serve on the
15 bylaws committee for the Macula Society. And I'm a founding
16 member of the Vit-Buckle Society, which has now become a large
17 organization focusing on mentorship of young surgeons in their
18 residency and fellowship and in the first part of their
19 careers.

20 I'm codirector now for the last, I think, five years
21 of the annual Angiogenesis meeting that was started by my
22 colleague Dr. Phil Rosenfeld, and I do that along with
23 Dr. Harry Flynn. The three of us are codirectors of one of the
24 largest scientific meetings dealing with angiogenic eye
25 disorders.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

THOMAS A. ALBINI, MD - DIRECT

1 I've been editor on the *Journal of Vitreoretinal*
2 *Diseases*, although I stepped down recently due to time
3 constraints. And I've been an editor for a professional
4 magazine called *Retina Today*, I think, for about 12 years.

5 Q. In the context of providing your opinions in this
6 matter, did you provide a definition for a person of ordinary
7 skill in the art?

8 A. Yes, I did. I believe it's on the next slide.

9 Q. Is that definition shown here on Slide 6?

10 A. That's correct.

11 Q. Now, I'm just going to take some time to read this
12 into the record so we have a clear record of what that
13 definition was.

14 THE COURT: Slowly, please, Counsel.

15 MR. McLAUGHLIN: Understood.

16 BY MR. McLAUGHLIN:

17 Q. So from paragraph 91 of your expert report it begins:
18 "After considering the above-mentioned factors, it is
19 my opinion that a person of ordinary skill in the context of
20 both the '601 patent and the '572 patent would have:

21 "1. Knowledge regarding the diagnosis and treatment
22 of angiogenic eye disorders, including the administration of
23 therapies to treat said disorders; and

24 "2. The ability to understand results and findings
25 presented or published by others in the field, including the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 publications discussed herein.

2 "Typically, such a person would have an advanced
3 degree, such as an MD or PhD, or equivalent or less education
4 but considerable professional experience in the medical,
5 biotechnological, or pharmaceutical field with practical
6 academic or medical experience in:

7 "1. Developing treatments for angiogenic eye
8 disorders, such as AMD, including through the use of VEGF
9 antagonists; or

10 "2. Treating of same, including through the use of
11 VEGF antagonists."

12 Did I read that correctly?

13 A. That's correct.

14 Q. And in your opinion, do you meet the definition of a
15 POSA with regard to the '601 and '572 patents?

16 A. I believe I do. I hold an advanced degree; I think I
17 can understand a publication result; and I diagnose and treat
18 those disorders.

19 Q. Would you have met that definition in the 2010 time
20 frame?

21 A. Yes, I would have.

22 Q. At this time could you please turn to DTX 8205 in
23 your -- set of binders you've been provided.

24 A. I'm not sure where the binders are. Maybe I should
25 have grabbed that.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

THOMAS A. ALBINI, MD - DIRECT

1 THE COURT: Of all people, the witness does not have
2 a binder.

3 One second, Doctor.

4 THE WITNESS: I apologize.

5 You're directing me to Volume 1?

6 BY MR. McLAUGHLIN:

7 Q. DTX 8205.

8 A. I recognize that document. Yes, I see it.

9 Q. Is that a copy of your current CV?

10 A. That's correct.

11 MR. McLAUGHLIN: So, Your Honor, at this point we
12 would like to move to admit DTX 8205, Dr. Albin's CV, into
13 evidence.

14 THE COURT: Any objection?

15 MS. OBERWETTER: No objection, Your Honor.

16 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

17 (DTX 8205 was admitted.)

18 MR. McLAUGHLIN: At this time we also proffer
19 Dr. Albin as an expert in the diagnosis and treatment of
20 vitreoretinal disease.

21 THE COURT: Any voir dire or objection?

22 MS. OBERWETTER: Yes, Your Honor, as follows. We
23 don't have any objection to him being offered as a treater of
24 angiogenic eye disorders. We have some concern there are going
25 to be opinions elicited today on formulation topics. We do not

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

THOMAS A. ALBINI, MD - DIRECT

1 believe that Dr. Albini is an expert on formulation issues.
2 And if he intends to speak on his own account about what
3 certain references do or do not disclose about formulations, we
4 do have voir dire from that standpoint, Your Honor.

5 THE COURT: We'll take that up if and when we tread
6 into those grounds.

7 But no objection to the present motion as a treater
8 of these certain eye disorders, correct?

9 MS. OBERWETTER: Correct, Your Honor.

10 THE COURT: Without objection, that motion is
11 granted, and the doctor is deemed so qualified.

12 MR. McLAUGHLIN: Thank you, Your Honor.

13 BY MR. McLAUGHLIN:

14 Q. Turning to Slide 7. Dr. Albini, before we get to the
15 substance of your opinions, did you conduct your analysis from
16 the perspective of a person of ordinary skill in the art as you
17 described it as of January 2012?

18 A. I did. And I reviewed the subject matter of the
19 dosing patents and of the asserted claims, the prior art
20 prosecution histories, the technology at issues. And I bring
21 to that my 20 years of experience as described.

22 Q. In the context of formulating your opinions, did you
23 review Dr. Csaky's responsive expert report in this case?

24 A. I did.

25 Q. And did Dr. Csaky provide a definition of a person of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968